

ENGLISH

الصف الخامس الابتدائي
الفصل الدراسي الأول

20
26



5th

PRIMARY
FIRST TERM

دار غزة

للطباعة والنشر والتوزيع

ghazzahouse@gmail.com



Contents

5

Primary

Part 1

- **Punctuation**
- **Unit 1:** Food, Nature, and Culture
- **Unit 2:** My Healthy Body
- **Unit 3:** When Nature Changes
- **Review 1**



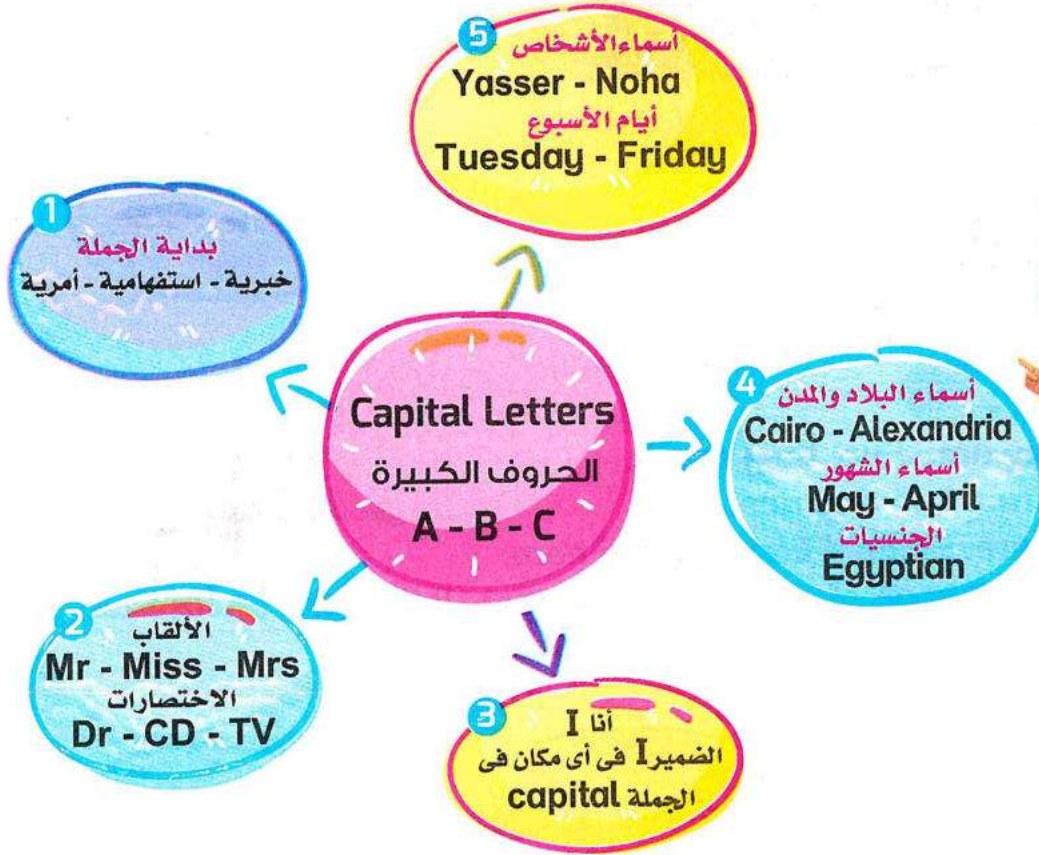
Part 2

- **Unit 4:** My Communities
- **Unit 5:** Our World, Our Resources
- **Unit 6:** The Talking Earth
- **Review 2**
- **Listening materials**
- **Booklet**
- **Dictation**
- **Exercises and Tests**
- **Final Tests**



Punctuation

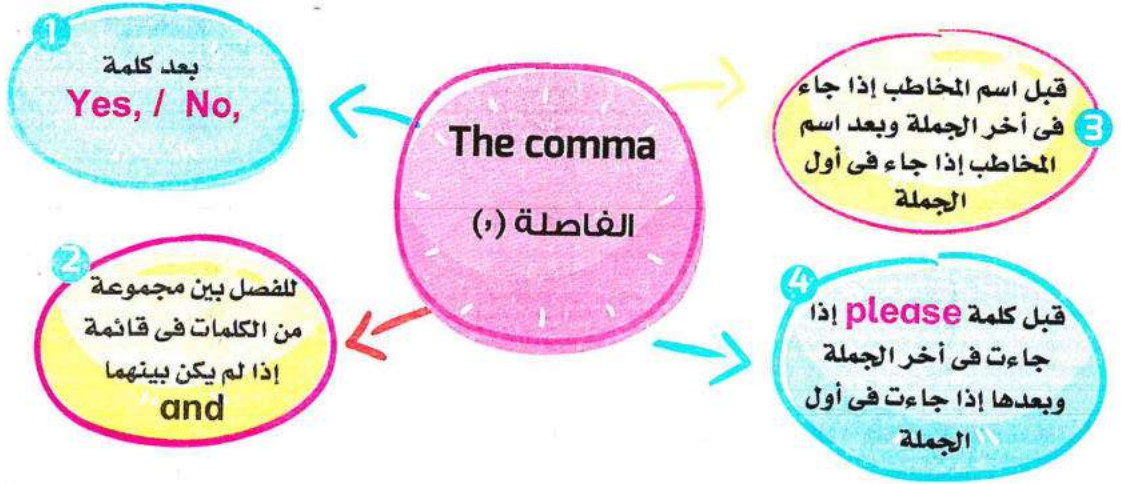
علامات الترقيم



Examples:

1. **S**ameh is a teacher. (جملة خبرية)
2. **C**lose your book. (جملة أمرية)
3. **W**here's your house? (جملة استفهامية)
4. **I** want some water. **I**'m thirsty. (الضمير)
5. We visited **C**airo in **M**arch. (أسماء مدن وشهور)
6. **M**r Tamer plays tennis on **W**ednesday. (الألقاب وأيام الأسبوع)

Punctuation



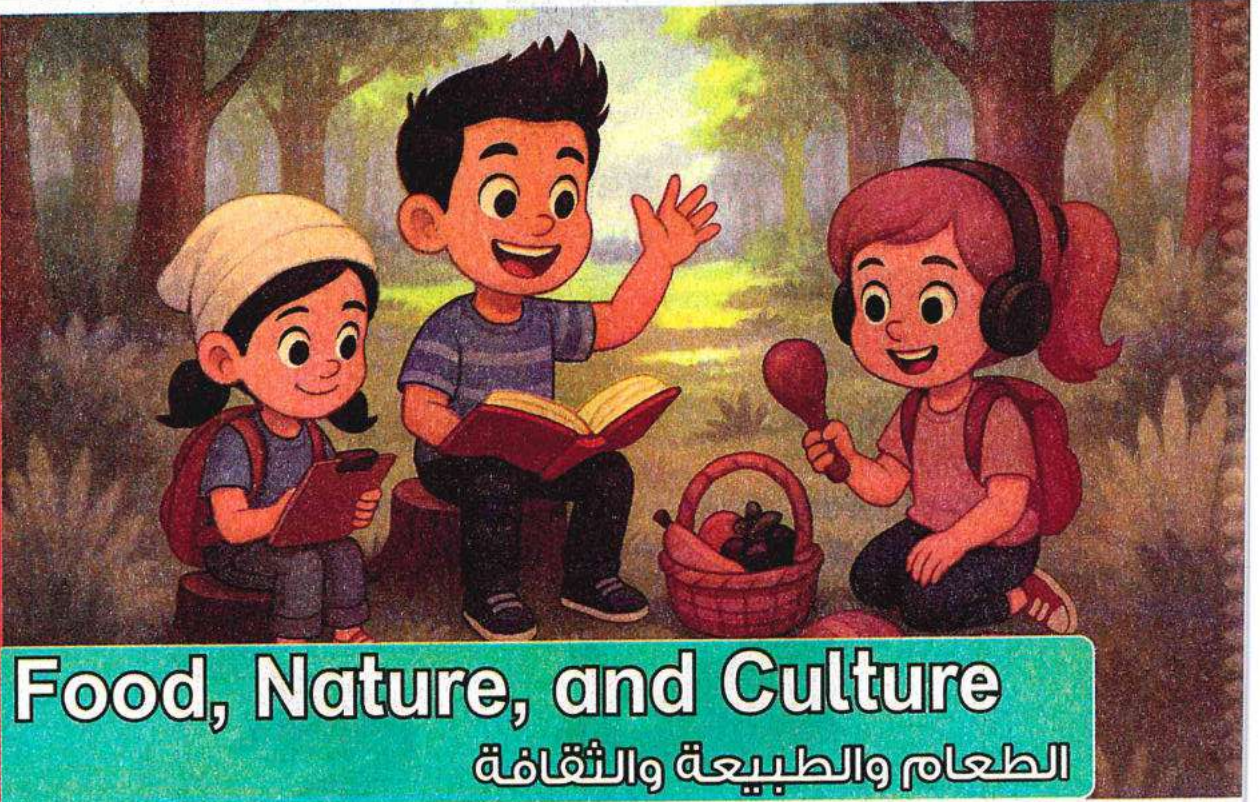
Examples:

- **Yes**, they are. / **No**, they aren't. (بعد **Yes, / No,**)
- I want **fruit, fish and rice**. (للفصل بين مجموعة كلمات في قائمة)
- Come here, **Eman**. / **Eman**, come here. (اسم مخاطب)
- Give me this book, **please**. / **Please**, give me this book. (كلمة **Please**)



Examples

1. We are friends. (جملة خبرية)
2. Close the window. (جملة أمرية)
3. How are you, Karim? (جملة استفهامية)
4. Hello! Nabil. (علامة تعجب)



Food, Nature, and Culture

الطعام والطبيعة والثقافة

Learning Outcomes

Speaking:

- Ask and answer questions about the Nile River and the hot desert.
يسأل الطالب أسئلة حول نهر النيل والصحراء الحارة ويجيب عنها.
- Use new vocabulary related to life in the Nile River and the hot desert.
يستخدم الطالب مفردات جديدة تتعلق بالحياة في نهر النيل والصحراء الحارة.
- Recognize and repeat consonant clusters in common words.
يتعرف الطالب على مجموعات الحروف الساكنة في الكلمات الشائعة ويرددها.

Reading:

- Discuss the moral of a short story.
يناقش الطالب العبرة أو الدرس المستفاد من قصة قصيرة.
- Identify the sequence of events and the end in a story.
يحدد الطالب تسلسل الأحداث ونهاية القصة.
- Reorder the steps of an Egyptian food recipe.
يعيد الطالب ترتيب خطوات وصفة طعام مصرية.

Listening:

- Identify new vocabulary related to life in the Nile River.
يتعرف الطالب على المفردات الجديدة المتعلقة بالحياة في نهر النيل.
- Answer comprehension questions based on a listening text about life in the Nile River.
يجيب الطالب عن أسئلة الفهم بناءً على نص استماع عن الحياة في نهر النيل.

Writing:

- Complete sentences using the adverbs of frequency.
يُكْمِل الطالب الجمل باستخدام ظروف التكرار.
- Write a recipe using sequence words.
يكتب الطالب وصفة باستخدام كلمات الترتيب.
- Make a flyer about your favorite restaurant.
يصمم الطالب منشورًا عن مطعمه المفضل.

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات،



water weeds

حشائش مائية



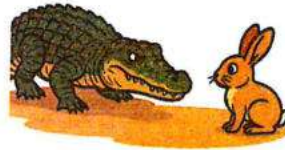
The Nile River

نهر النيل



insects

حشرات



hunt

يصيد



crocodile

تمساح

small fish
birds
creature

سمكة صغيرة
طيور
كائن حي

kings of the Nile
food
animals

ملوك نهر النيل
طعام
حيوانات



Other words

كلمات أخرى

rivers
strong

أنهار
قوي

even
many

حتى
كثير



Expressions, prepositions and phrases

تعبيرات وحروف جر وعبارات

look at

انظر إلى

not really

ليس تمامًا / ليس بالضبط

What about...?

ماذا عن...؟

find food to survive يجد طعامًا ليبقى على قيد الحياة

play an important role

يلعب دور هام

That's why

ولهذا السبب

around the world

حول العالم

home to

موطن لـ

one of the longest rivers

واحد من أطول الأنهار

look like

يشبه

Adjectives صفات

small	صغير	colorful	ملونة
interesting	مثير للاهتمام	big	كبير
tiny	صغير جدًا / دقيق	huge	ضخم
scary	مخيف	larger	أكبر
amazing	رائع / مذهش	important	مهم
dangerous	خطير		

Conjugation of verbs تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

play	يلعب / يؤدي
protect	يحمي
hunt	يصطاد
survive	يبقى حيًا

Past ماض

played
protected
hunted
survived

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

eat	يأكل
know	يعرف
come	يأتي
find	يجد

Past ماض

ate
knew
came
found

Study the following

- 1 Look at the small fish in the Nile River! - انظر إلى السمك الصغير في نهر النيل!
- 2 They are so colorful. - إنها كثيرة الألوان.
- 3 Do you know that small fish eat plants in the water? - هل تعلم أن السمك الصغير يأكل النباتات في الماء؟
- 4 These are called water weeds. - تُسمى هذه حشائش الماء.
- 5 Birds eat small fish, insects, and even plants near the river. - تأكل الطيور السمك الصغير، والحشرات، وحتى النباتات القريبة من النهر.
- 6 They eat smaller fish, insects, and tiny creatures in the water. - إنها تأكل السمك الأصغر، والحشرات، والكائنات الصغيرة في الماء.
- 7 They eat fish, birds, and sometimes larger animals that come near the water. - إنها تأكل السمك، والطيور، وأحيانًا الحيوانات الأكبر التي تقترب من الماء.

Unit 1 Food, Nature, and Culture

8 Huge crocodiles are scary!

9 Do any animals hunt them?

10 Not really-they are the kings of the Nile!

11 It's amazing how all animals in the river find food to survive.

12 Each animal plays an important role.

13 That's why we must protect the river.

- التماسيح الضخمة مخيفة!

- هل هناك حيوانات تصطادها؟

- ليس تمامًا - إنهم ملوك النيل!

- من المدهش كيف تجد جميع الحيوانات في النهر طعامًا لتبقى على قيد الحياة.

- كل حيوان له دور مهم.

- ولهذا السبب، يجب أن نحمي النهر.

Read the text

اقرأ النص:

استمع إلى النص:



Ahmed : Look at the small fish in the Nile River! They are so colorful.

أحمد: انظري إلى السمك الصغير في نهر النيل! إنها كثيرة الألوان.

Laila : Yes! Do you know that small fish eat plants in the water? These are called water weeds.

ليلى: نعم! هل تعلمي أن السمك الصغير يأكل النباتات الموجودة في الماء؟ هذه النباتات تسمى "حشائش الماء".



Ahmed : That's interesting! What about birds? What do they eat?

أحمد: هذا شيء مثير للاهتمام! وماذا عن الطيور؟ ماذا تأكل؟

Laila : Birds eat small fish, insects, and even plants near the river.

ليلى: الطيور تأكل السمك الصغير، والحشرات، وأحيانًا النباتات القريبة من النهر.

Ahmed : Wow! What about big fish?

أحمد: رائع! وماذا عن السمك الكبير؟

Laila : They eat smaller fish, insects, and tiny creatures in the water.

ليلى: إنها تأكل السمك الأصغر منها، والحشرات، وكائنات صغيرة تعيش في الماء.

Ahmed : And crocodiles? What do they eat?

أحمد: والتماسيح؟ ماذا تأكل؟

Laila : They eat fish, birds, and sometimes larger animals that come near the water.

ليلى: إنها تأكل السمك، والطيور، وأحيانًا حيوانات أكبر التي تقترب من النهر.

Ahmed : Huge crocodiles are scary! Do any animals hunt them?

أحمد: التماسيح الضخمة مخيفة! هل هناك حيوانات تصطادها؟

Laila : Not really-they are the kings of the Nile!

ليلى: ليس كثيرًا، فالتماسيح هي ملوك نهر النيل!

Ahmed : It's amazing how all animals in the river find food to survive.

أحمد: من الرائع أن كل الحيوانات في النهر تعرف كيف تجد طعام لتعيش.

Laila : Each animal plays an important role. That's why we must protect the river.

ليلى: كل حيوان له دور مهم. لذلك، يجب أن نحمي النهر.

Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



- Small fish eat plants called
☐ a water trees ☐ b water weeds ☐ c river grass ☐ d green rocks
- Birds eat small fish and
☐ a flowers ☐ b insects ☐ c crocodiles ☐ d leaves
- Big fish eat smaller fish and
☐ a tiny creatures ☐ b birds ☐ c water ☐ d grass
- Crocodiles eat fish, birds, and sometimes animals.
☐ a little ☐ b soft ☐ c small ☐ d big

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- Crocodiles small animals for food.
☐ a protect ☐ b survive ☐ c hunt ☐ d play
- Animals in the river find food to
☐ a protect ☐ b play ☐ c know ☐ d survive
- Some insects are very small, you can't see them. They are
☐ a huge ☐ b tiny ☐ c large ☐ d big
- The Nile River plays an important in our life
☐ a role ☐ b ruler ☐ c rule ☐ d root
- Small fish live in the
☐ a school ☐ b desert ☐ c river ☐ d sky
- Crocodiles are animals.
☐ a tiny ☐ b soft ☐ c huge ☐ d weak
- Water weeds are that grow in water.
☐ a animals ☐ b plants ☐ c rocks ☐ d fish

Unit 1 Food, Nature, and Culture

8. The Nile River is one of therivers in the world.
a shortest **b** driest **c** longest **d** coldest
9. The crocodile is the of the Nile.
a king **b** baby **c** bird **d** fish
10. Fish, birds, and crocodiles find in the river.
a fun **b** sleep **c** food **d** toys
11. We must the Nile River and its animals.
a protect **b** watch **c** draw **d** play

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

survive - tiny - water - Crocodiles

Many animals live in the Nile River. Small fish eat plants called water weeds. Big fish eat smaller fish and ① creatures. ② eat fish, birds, and sometimes big animals. Birds eat small fish and insects. All animals need water to live and ③

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

The Nile is a very long river in Africa. Many creatures live in and around the river. Tiny fish feed on plants that grow underwater. Flying animals like birds catch small fish and insects. Large fish eat smaller ones and other little animals that swim in the river. Crocodiles are strong hunters. They eat fish, birds, and sometimes big animals that come near the water. Every living thing has a job in nature, and it's important to take care of their home.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Tiny fish feed on plants that grow
a in trees **b** underwater **c** on the sand **d** in the sky
2. Crocodiles are hunters.
a weak **b** quiet **c** strong **d** lazy

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What do birds eat?

4. Why is the Nile River important for animals?

5. What do large fish eat in the river?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make a sentence.

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. crocodiles - scary - are - Huge!

2. are - the Nile - the kings - of - They!

3. important role - animal - plays - an - Each.

4. must - We - the river - protect.

6 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

Life in the Nile River

fish - crocodiles

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المضردات:



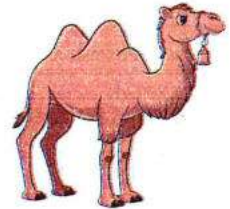
snake

ثعبان



lizard

سحلية



camel

جمل



owl

بومة



rat

فأر كبير



fox

ثعلب

desert
the day
plants
energy
balance

صحراء
النهار
نباتات
طاقة
توازن

rocks
night
nature
role

صخور
ليل
الطبيعة
دور

Expressions, prepositions and phrases

تعابير وأحرف جر وعبارات

under rocks

تحت الصخور

at night

في الليل

when it is cooler

عندما يكون الجو أبرد

has an important role

لديه دور مهم

stay in balance

يبقى في توازن

to stay strong

ليبقى قوياً

Adjectives

صفات

hot

حار

dry

جاف

strong

قوي

cool

important

بارد / لطيف

مهم

Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	
stay	يبقى
help	يساعد

Past ماضٍ	
stayed	
helped	

Present مضارع	
eat	يأكل
give	يعطي
come	يأتي / يخرج
hide	يختبئ

Past ماضٍ	
ate	
gave	
came	
hid	

Study the following

1 The desert is hot and dry, but many animals live there.

- الصحراء حارة وجافة، لكن العديد من الحيوانات تعيش هناك.

2 Snakes often eat small animals like rats or lizards.

- تأكل الثعابين غالباً حيوانات صغيرة مثل الفئران أو السحالي.

3 Camels live in the desert, too.

- تعيش الجمال أيضاً في الصحراء.

4 They eat plants to stay strong.

- تأكل الجمال النباتات لتبقى قوية.

5 Lizards eat insects, which give them energy.

- تأكل السحالي الحشرات، والتي تعطيها الطاقة.

6 Some animals hide under rocks to stay cool during the day.

- تختبئ بعض الحيوانات تحت الصخور لتبقى باردة خلال النهار.

7 Others, like owls, come out at night when it is cooler.

- وحيوانات أخرى، مثل البوم، تخرج ليلاً عندما يكون الجو أبرد.

8 Each animal has an important role in the desert.

- لكل حيوان دور مهم في الصحراء.

9 They help nature stay in balance.

- إنهم يساعدون الطبيعة على البقاء متوازنة.

10 Snakes never store water in their bodies.

- لا تخزين الثعابين الماء في أجسامها أبداً.

Read the text

اقرأ النص:

Animals in the Desert

The desert is hot and dry, but many animals live there. Snakes often eat small animals like rats or lizards. Camels live in the desert, too. They eat plants to stay strong. Lizards eat insects, which give them energy. Some animals hide under rocks to stay cool during the day. Others, like owls, come out at night when it is cooler. Each animal has an important role in the desert. They help nature stay in balance.



الصحراء حارة وجافة، لكن العديد من الحيوانات تعيش هناك. تأكل الثعابين غالباً حيوانات صغيرة مثل الفئران أو السحالي. تعيش الجمال أيضاً في الصحراء. تأكل النباتات لتبقى قوية. تأكل السحالي الحشرات، والتي تعطيها الطاقة. تختبئ بعض الحيوانات تحت الصخور لتبقى باردة خلال النهار. وحيوانات أخرى، مثل البوم، تخرج ليلاً عندما يكون الجو أبرد. لكل حيوان دور مهم في الصحراء. إنهم يساعدون الطبيعة على البقاء متوازنة.

Language notes

ملاحظات لغوية

ظروف التكرار Adverbs of Frequency

Usage الاستخدام

We use adverbs of frequency to talk about how often something happens.

نستخدم ظروف التكرار لمعرفة نسبة حدوث الفعل

always → usually → often → sometimes → rarely → never
(100%) (80%) (70%) (50%) (20%) (0%)

100%	always	I always look after my little sister. اعتنى دائماً باختي الصغيرة (افعل ذلك دائماً).
90%	usually	I am usually tired in the evening. اشعر عادة بالتعب في المساء. (في اوقات كثيرة وليس طوال الوقت)
70%	often	I don't often watch television. غالباً اشاهد التلفاز. (في اغلب الوقت)
50%	sometimes	I sometimes get up early in the summer vacation. احياناً استيقظ مبكراً في عطلة الصيف (نصف ايام الاسبوع)

20%

rarely

I **rarely** travel abroad.

نادرا ما اسافر للخارج. (نادرا ما حدث ذلك)

0%

never

I **never** visit the Pyramids.

لم ازر الاهرام ابدا (لم افعل ذلك ولا مرة)

- تأتي ظروف التكرار بعد فعل يكون (verb to be) وقبل الافعال الاخرى

Verb to be → Adverbs of frequency

Adverbs of frequency → Other verbs

⊙ ظرف التكرار يأتي قبل الفعل الأساسي

✓ I **often** play football.

✗ I play often football.

⊙ ولكن بعد فعل "to be" (am, is, are)

✓ She **is** always happy.

✗ She always is happy.

Practice

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات التي بين الاقواس:

1. She (**always is**) polite.
2. I (**play sometimes**) football.
3. They (**never**) get high marks. They study hard.
4. I (**always**) like pasta. I don't like it at all.

Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. The desert is and dry.

☐ a cold

☐ b hot

☐ c wet

☐ d rainy

2. Snakes often eat

☐ a plants

☐ b grass

☐ c rats

☐ d water

3. Camels eat to stay strong.

☐ a meat

☐ b insects

☐ c plants

☐ d rocks

4. Owls come out

☐ a in the morning

☐ b at night

☐ c in the rain

☐ d during the day

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Snakes often eat small animals, like or lizards.

☐ a rats

☐ b hippos

☐ c camels

☐ d lions

2. Insects give lizards

☐ a weeds

☐ b energy

☐ c home

☐ d air

3. Each animal in the desert has an role to play.

☐ a simple

☐ b easy

☐ c important

☐ d hard

4. Different animals help nature stay in

☐ a balance

☐ b desert

☐ c plant

☐ d role

5. Birds can in the sky.

☐ a swim

☐ b fly

☐ c run

☐ d jump

6. We wear a coat when it is

☐ a hot

☐ b cold

☐ c sunny

☐ d wet

7. Fish can in the water.

☐ a jump

☐ b fly

☐ c swim

☐ d run

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

dry - rats - plants - rocks

The desert is hot and dry, but many animals live there. Snakes often eat small animals like insects or lizards. Camels live in the desert, too. They eat ① to stay strong. Snakes eat ② , which give them energy. Some animals hide under ③ to stay cool during the day. Others, like owls , come out at night when it is cooler.

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. I (eat always) breakfast at 7 o'clock.
2. We (play often) in the garden.
3. He (goes usually) to the park on Fridays.
4. My dad (drives never) fast.
5. She (always is) tired after work.
6. Lizards (hide usually) under rocks
7. He (never is) late for school.
8. Lizards (sometimes are) dangerous.

SB

5 Put the words in the correct order to make a sentence.

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. animals - Desert - food - rarely - find. SB
2. always - Camels - store - bodies - their - water - in. SB
3. plants - Camels - strong - eat - to - stay. SB
4. help - stay - in - balance - They - nature. SB

6 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

Animals in the desert

Desert - Animals

★ Story Time!

The Giving Tree

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات،



crown	تاج	branch	غصن / فرع
shade	ظل	care for	يعتنى بـ
trunk	جذع (الشجرة)	solution	حل
selfish	اناني	result	نتيجة
problem	مشكلة		

Other words كلمات أخرى

delicious	لذيذ	sad	حزين
feelings	مشاعر	weak	ضعيف
needs	احتياجات	slowly	ببطء
years	سنوات	leaves	أوراق الشجر
shiny	لامع	friends	أصدقاء
ceremony	مراسم	nest	عش

Expressions, prepositions and phrases تعبيرات وحروف جر وعبارات

once upon a time	كان يا ما كان	came back home	عاد إلى المنزل
think about	يفكر في	take care of	يعتنى بـ
on a hot day	في يوم حار	became better	أصبح أفضل
made crowns from its leaves	صنع تيجاناً من أوراقها	the best of friends	أعز الأصدقاء
a boy named	ولد يسمى		

Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

appreciate	يقدر
ignore	يهمل / يتجاهل
rest	يستريح
climb	يتسلق
pass	يمر
realize	يدرك

Past ماضٍ

appreciated
ignored
rested
climbed
passed
realized

Present مضارع

think	يفكر
come	يأتي
become	يصبح
take	يأخذ
bend	ينحني
give back	يرد الجميل
wear	يرتدي

Past ماضٍ

thought
came
became
took
bent
gave back
wore

Definitions

تعريفات

English	Arabic	Definition	Arabic Meaning
crown	تاج	a special hat worn by kings or queens	1. اهتمام
care for	يعتني بـ	to show interest ⁽¹⁾ and concern ⁽²⁾ for something	2. قلق
shade	ظل	a dark shadow created when sunlight is blocked ⁽³⁾ by something	3. محبوب
trunk	جذع	the main, thick part of a tree supporting ⁽⁴⁾ its branches and leaves	4. دائم
branch	غصن	a part that grows out from a tree's trunk, where leaves grow	
selfish	أناني	caring for oneself only	

Study the following

- 1 Once upon a time, there was a boy named Tom. - كان يا ما كان، كان هناك ولد يُدعى توم.
- 2 He loved a big, strong apple tree in his garden. - كان يحب شجرة تفاح كبيرة وقوية في حديقته.
- 3 Tom used the tree for everything. - كان توم يستخدم الشجرة في كل شيء.
- 4 He made crowns from its leaves. - كان يصنع تيجاناً من أوراقها.
- 5 He climbed its trunk with his friends. - وكان يتسلق جذعها مع أصدقائه.
- 6 But Tom never thought about the tree's feelings or needs. - لكن توم لم يفكر أبداً في مشاعر الشجرة أو احتياجاتها.

Unit 1 Food, Nature, and Culture

- 7 He rarely gave it food or water. - نادراً ما كان يعطيها طعاماً أو ماءً.
- 8 Its leaves bent, and its branches were weak. - أوراقها كانت منحنية، وأغصانها ضعيفة.
- 9 When Tom saw the tree, he realized that he had been selfish. - عندما رأى توم الشجرة، أدرك أنه كان أنانياً.
- 10 Tom started to care for the tree. - بدأ توم يعتني بالشجرة.
- 11 He watered it and protected it from the sun. - سقاها وحماها من الشمس.
- 12 Tom learned that taking care of something meant giving back. - تعلم توم أن العناية بشيء ما تعني رد الجميل.
- 13 He and the tree became the best of friends. - وأصبح هو والشجرة أعز الأصدقاء.

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ:

استمع إلى النص:



Once upon a time, there was a boy named Tom who loved a big, strong apple tree in his garden. Tom used the tree for everything. He made crowns⁽¹⁾ from its leaves and ate its delicious apples. He rested in its shade and climbed its trunk with his friends. But Tom never thought about the tree's feelings⁽²⁾ or needs. He rarely gave it food or water.



كان يا ما كان، كان هناك ولد يسمى توم. كان يحب شجرة تفاح كبيرة وقوية في حديقته. كان توم يستخدم الشجرة في كل شيء. صنع تيجاناً من أوراقها. وكان يأكل تفاحها اللذيذ. استراح في ظلها، وتسلق جذعها مع أصدقائه. لكن توم لم يفكر أبداً في مشاعر الشجرة أو احتياجاتها. نادراً ما كان يعطيها طعاماً أو ماءً.

Tom traveled to another place. Years passed⁽³⁾ and Tom came back home.

سافر توم إلى مكان آخر. مرت سنوات. وعاد توم إلى المنزل.

The tree looked sad. Its leaves bent, and its branches⁽⁴⁾ were weak. When Tom saw the tree, he realized that he had been selfish.

بدت الشجرة حزينة. كانت أوراقها منحنية. وأغصانها ضعيفة. عندما رأى توم الشجرة، أدرك أنه كان أنانياً.

Arabic Meaning

١. تيجان
٢. مشاعر
٣. مضت
٤. فروع
٥. بيطيء

Tom started to care for the tree, watering it, and protecting it from the sun. Slowly⁽⁵⁾, the tree began to become better.

بدأ توم يعتني بالشجرة. يسقيها ويحميها من الشمس. وببطء، بدأت الشجرة تتحسن.

Tom learned that taking care of something meant giving back, and he and the tree became the best of friends.

تعلم توم أن العناية بشيء ما تعني رد الجميل. وأصبح هو والشجرة أعز الأصدقاء.



Pronunciation

استمع إلى النص:



⊙ A **consonant cluster** is a sequence of two or more consonant sounds without vowels, such as **str-** in strong or **bl-** in black. They can appear at the beginning, middle, or end of words.

⊙ مجموعة الاصوات الساكنة هي صوتين او اكثر ساكنين وتاتي متتابعة بدون صوت متحرك مثل **str-** في كلمة **strong** و **bl-** في **black**. ويمكن أن تأتي اول او منتصف او اخر الكلمات.



tree شجرة



truck شاحنة



crocodile تمساح



crops محصول



spring الربيع



strong قوى



black لون اسود



plant نبات



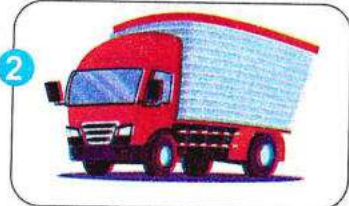
drink يشرب

Listen, look, and circle the correct word.

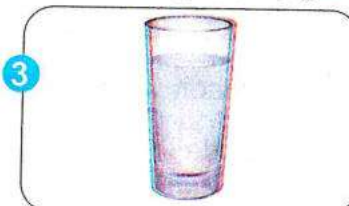
استمع وانظر وضع دائرة حول الكلمة الصحيحة:



pant - plant



tuck - truck



drink - ink



black - back



bee - tree



crops - cups

Read the text and circle the consonant clusters.

اقرأ النص وضع دائرة حول مجموعة الاصوات الساكنة:

Ahmed climbed the trunk and rested near the branches. He saw a small crocodile beside the stream, and big fish swam past swiftly. Laila smiled and drank from the spring, then watched birds perch near the bank.

Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة :

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



- Ahmed climbed the and rested near the branches.
☐ a river ☐ b trunk ☐ c spring ☐ d bank
- He saw a small beside the stream.
☐ a bird ☐ b fish ☐ c crocodile ☐ d branch
- Big fish swam past
☐ a slowly ☐ b quietly ☐ c swiftly ☐ d loudly
- Laila smiled and drank from the
☐ a bank ☐ b stream ☐ c spring ☐ d trunk

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة :

- The queen wore a shiny gold at the ceremony. SB
☐ a shade ☐ b crown ☐ c branch ☐ d sail
- We sat under the tree to rest in the on a hot day. SB
☐ a crown ☐ b sail ☐ c shade ☐ d branch
- Omar was so He didn't want to give his toys to anyone. SB
☐ a careful ☐ b selfish ☐ c old ☐ d cold
- A bird built a nest on a high of the tree. SB
☐ a crown ☐ b shade ☐ c sail ☐ d branch
- The thick, main part of a tree is called the
☐ a crown ☐ b selfish ☐ c trunk ☐ d shade
- A grows out from the trunk and has leaves.
☐ a crown ☐ b branch ☐ c shade ☐ d trunk
- It is important to plants and animals to keep them healthy.
☐ a crown ☐ b care for ☐ c selfish ☐ d branch

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

crown - trunk - shade - selfish

Hamza loved his big apple tree. He made a crown from its leaves. He climbed the ① to see the birds. He rested in the ② on hot days. At first, Hamza was ③ because he did not care for the tree.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Tom loved a big apple tree in his garden. He made crowns from its leaves and ate its delicious apples. He rested in its shade and climbed its trunk with his friends. But Tom was selfish because he did not care for the tree. He rarely gave it food or water. One day, Tom traveled far away. Years later, he came back home and saw the tree was sad. Its leaves bent, and its branches were weak. Tom started to care for the tree by watering it and protecting it from the sun. Slowly, the tree got better. Tom learned that caring for something means giving back.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Tom made a from the tree's leaves.

a trunk**b** crown**c** branch**d** shade

2. The tree was sad because Tom was

a selfish**b** kind**c** strong**d** careful**B. Answer the following questions:**

3. What did Tom use the tree's leaves for?

4. Why did the tree look sad when Tom came back?

5. How did Tom help the tree get better?

Unit 1 Food, Nature, and Culture

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي :

1. tom loves to climb the apple tree

2. did Tom water the tree every day

6 Write a paragraph of **THIRTY (30)** words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن :

Taking Care of Trees

مَجَاب عَنْهُ آخِرُ الْوَحْدَةِ

shade - branches

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



koshari

كشري



rice

أرز



pasta

مكرونة



lentils

عدس



sauce

صلصة



chickpeas

حمص



onions

بصل



garlic

ثوم



spices

توابل

ingredients

flavor

vinegar

website

مكونات الطعام

طعم

خل

موقع علي الانترنت

traditional

recipe

flyer

information

تقليدي

وصفة طعام

منشور اعلاني

معلومات

Unit 1 Food, Nature, and Culture

Food Ajectives

tasty / yummy	لذيذ / شهى	spicy	حار / متبل
crispy / crunchy	مقرمش	healthy	صحي

Other words

pot	قدر / اناء	restaurant	مطعم
oil	زيت	menu	قائمة طعام
slices	شرائح	fried chicken	دجاج مقلي
meal	وجبة	cheese burger	برجر بالجبن
Dakka	دقة (ثوم وخل وتوابل)	grilled chicken	دجاج مشوى
bowl	وعاء	sea food	مأكولات بحرية
Egyptian	مصري	fast food	وجبات سريعة
mix	خليط		

Expressions, prepositions and phrases

in a pot	في قدر	on top	في الأعلى / على السطح
cut into thin slices	يقطع إلى شرائح رفيعة	after that	بعد ذلك

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

Present	مضارع
add	يضيف
prepare	يُحضّر
fry	يقلي
pour	يسكب / يصب
mix	يخلط
cook	يطبخ
slice	يقطع إلى شرائح
turn	يتحول
chop	يقطع قطع صغيرة / يفرم

أفعال منتظمة

Past	ماضي
added	
prepared	
fried	
poured	
mixed	
cooked	
sliced	
turned	
chopped	

Irregular verbs

Present	مضارع
put	يضع
cut	يقطع
make	يصنع

أفعال غير منتظمة

Past	ماضي
put	
cut	
made	

Study the following

- 1 Koshari is a tasty Egyptian meal with many simple ingredients in one bowl.
الكشري وجبة مصرية لذيذة تحتوي على مكونات بسيطة وكثيرة في طبق واحد.
- 2 First, you need to cook rice in a pot with water.
أولاً، تحتاج إلى طهي الأرز في قدر مع الماء.
- 3 For the red sauce, fry some chopped garlic in oil.
لتحضير الصلصة الحمراء، اقلي بعض الثوم المفروم في الزيت.
- 4 Add tomato sauce, vinegar, and some spices.
أضف صلصة الطماطم، الخل، وبعض التوابل.
- 5 You also need to make crispy onions.
تحتاج أيضاً إلى عمل بصل مقرمش.
- 6 Then, fry them in oil until they turn brown and crunchy.
ثم اقليها في الزيت حتى تصبح بنية ومقرمشة.
- 7 Finally, pour the red sauce all over it.
وأخيراً، صب الصلصة الحمراء على الكشري.
- 8 There are two more sauces you can add for more flavor.
يوجد نوعان آخران من الصلصة يمكن إضافتهما لمزيد من الطعم.
- 9 The other is Dakka, which is made with garlic and vinegar.
والأخرى هي الدقة، وهي مصنوعة من الثوم والخل.
- 10 This mix of foods makes Koshari very yummy.
هذا الخليط من الأطعمة يجعل الكشري لذيذاً جداً.

Language notes

ملاحظات لغوية

First, Then, After that, Next, Finally

- عند كتابة وصفة طعام، نظم الخطوات باستخدام كلمات الترتيب مثل:
- أولاً (First) ← ثم (Then) ← بعد ذلك (After that) ← التالى (Next) ← وأخيراً (Finally).
- عندما نكتب وصفة طعام (مثل الكشري مثلاً)، نحتاج أن نكتب الخطوات بالترتيب. حتى تساعد القارئ أن يفهم الخطوات، نستخدم الكلمات السابقة وتسمى كلمات الترتيب.
- أولاً (First) : نستخدمها في أول خطوة.
- ثم (Then) : نستخدمها للخطوة الثانية.
- بعد ذلك (After that) : نستخدمها بعد ذلك.
- بعدها (Next) : الخطوة التالية
- وأخيراً (Finally) : نستخدمها في آخر خطوة.

- First, cook the rice.
- Then, boil the lentils.
- After that, fry the onions.
- Next, add the pasta.
- Finally, put the sauce on top.



My Favorite Egyptian Food طعامي المفضل المصري

Koshari is a tasty Egyptian meal with many simple **ingredients**⁽¹⁾ in one bowl. First, you need to cook rice in a pot with water. In another pot, prepare small pasta. Then, boil **lentils**⁽²⁾ in water. For the red sauce, fry some chopped garlic in oil, add tomato sauce, **vinegar**⁽³⁾, and some spices.



الكشري هو وجبة مصرية لذيذة. تحتوي على مكونات بسيطة كثيرة في طبق واحد. أولاً، نطبخ الأرز في قدر مع الماء. في قدر آخر، نحضر المكرونة الصغيرة. ثم نسلق العدس في الماء. لتحضير الصلصة الحمراء، نقلي الثوم المفروم في الزيت، ثم نضيف صلصة الطماطم، الخل، وبعض التوابل.

You also need to make crispy **onions**⁽⁴⁾. First, cut them into thin **slices**⁽⁵⁾. Next, fry them in oil until they turn brown and crunchy. After that, put the rice in a bowl and add the pasta and lentils on top. Then, add some **chickpeas**⁽⁶⁾.

Arabic Meaning

١. مكونات
٢. عدس
٣. خل
٤. بصل
٥. شرائح
٦. حمص

نحتاج أيضاً إلى عمل بصل مقرمش. نقطع البصل إلى شرائح رقيقة، ثم نقليه في الزيت حتى يصبح لونه بنيًا ويصير مقرمشاً. بعد ذلك، نضع الأرز في وعاء، ونضيف فوقه المكرونة والعدس، ثم نضيف الحمص.

Finally, pour the red sauce all over it, and put the crispy onions on top. There are two more sauces you can add for more flavor. One is a spicy tomato sauce, and the other is Dakka which is made with garlic and vinegar. This mix of foods makes Koshari very yummy. Koshari is a traditional Egyptian food.

وأخيراً، نسكب الصلصة الحمراء أعلى الطبق. ونضع البصل المقرمش في الأعلى. يمكننا إضافة صلصتين لزيادة الطعم: صلصة طماطم حارة ودقة (مصنوعة من الثوم والخل). هذا الخليط يجعل الكشري لذيذاً جداً. الكشري طعام مصري تقليدي.

Look at the restaurant flyer below.

انظر للمنشور الاعلاني بالاسفل:

A flyer

منشور اعلالي



Menu Restaurant

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit, sed
 diam nonummy nibh euismod tincidunt ut laoreet dolore
 magna aliquam erat volutpat.

SPECIAL MENU

Dishes

Lorem Ipsum \$12.50
 Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit, sed
 diam nonummy nibh euismod tincidunt ut laoreet dolore
 magna aliquam erat volutpat.

Lorem Ipsum \$12.50
 Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit, sed
 diam nonummy nibh euismod tincidunt ut laoreet dolore
 magna aliquam erat volutpat.

Lorem Ipsum \$12.50
 Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit, sed
 diam nonummy nibh euismod tincidunt ut laoreet dolore
 magna aliquam erat volutpat.

Drinks

Lorem Ipsum \$12.50
 Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit, sed
 diam nonummy nibh euismod tincidunt ut laoreet dolore
 magna aliquam erat volutpat.

Lorem Ipsum \$12.50
 Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit, sed
 diam nonummy nibh euismod tincidunt ut laoreet dolore
 magna aliquam erat volutpat.

Lorem Ipsum \$12.50
 Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit, sed
 diam nonummy nibh euismod tincidunt ut laoreet dolore
 magna aliquam erat volutpat.

Desserts

Lorem Ipsum \$12.50
 Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit, sed
 diam nonummy nibh euismod tincidunt ut laoreet dolore
 magna aliquam erat volutpat.

Lorem Ipsum \$12.50
 Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit, sed
 diam nonummy nibh euismod tincidunt ut laoreet dolore
 magna aliquam erat volutpat.

www.yoursite.com

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit, sed
 diam nonummy nibh euismod tincidunt ut laoreet dolore
 magna aliquam erat volutpat.



Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



- Koshari is a/an dish.
☐ a French ☐ b Egyptian ☐ c Italian ☐ d Indian
- Koshari is made of rice, lentils, and
☐ a bread ☐ b pasta ☐ c chicken ☐ d vegetables
- The sauce poured over Koshari is
☐ a yellow ☐ b green ☐ c red ☐ d white
- People like Koshari because it is
☐ a salty ☐ b spicy
☐ c tasty and healthy ☐ d cold

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- Koshari is very and popular in Egypt.
☐ a tasty ☐ b salty ☐ c sweet ☐ d cold
- People eat Koshari because it is
☐ a healthy ☐ b unhealthy ☐ c boring ☐ d bad
- The red tomato is poured on top.
☐ a pasta ☐ b sauce ☐ c rice ☐ d onion
- Koshari is a traditional Egyptian
☐ a pasta ☐ b meal ☐ c onion ☐ d sauce
- Do you know the for making Koshari?
☐ a recipe ☐ b flavor ☐ c flyer ☐ d slice
- Mom bought all the of the meal, rice, pasta and onions.
☐ a menu ☐ b ingredients ☐ c slices ☐ d crispy
- She the garlic and boiled the lentils.
☐ a chopped ☐ b turned ☐ c learned ☐ d boiled
- onions in oil to make them crispy.
☐ a Boil ☐ b Grill ☐ c Fry ☐ d Drink

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

sea - fried - menu - pizza

We went to a nice restaurant yesterday. The ① had many delicious food. I ordered ② chicken and pasta. My dad ate fish because he likes ③ food.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Koshari is a traditional Egyptian food. It is made with rice, lentils, and small pasta. These ingredients are cooked separately and then mixed together in a bowl. A special red tomato sauce with garlic, vinegar, and spices is poured on top. Crispy fried onions are added to make the dish crunchy and tasty. Many people in Egypt love Koshari because it is healthy and delicious. It is a popular meal for lunch or dinner.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Koshari is made of rice, lentils, and
☐ a bread ☐ b pasta ☐ c chicken ☐ d fish
2. A special red tomato is poured on top.
☐ a juice ☐ b sauce ☐ c soup ☐ d salad

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What ingredients are in Koshari?

4. Why do people like Koshari?

5. When do people usually eat Koshari?

5 Write a paragraph of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

My favorite food

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

traditional - healthy



Review

on Unit 1

Key vocabulary



water weeds

حشائش مائية



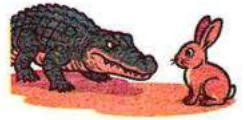
The Nile River

نهر النيل



insects

حشرات



hunt

يصيد



crocodile

تمساح



snake

ثعبان



lizard

سحلية



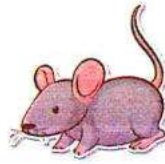
camel

جمل



owl

بومة



rat

فأر كبير



fox

ثعلب



koshari

كشري



rice

أرز



pasta

مكرونة



lentils

عدس



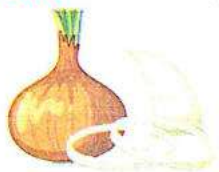
sauce

صلصة



chickpeas

حمص



onions

بصل



garlic

ثوم



spices

توابل

creature	كائن حي	website	موقع علي الانترنت
desert	صحراء	kings of the Nile	ملوك نهر النيل
energy	طاقة	rocks	صخور
balance	توازن	nature	الطبيعة
crown	تاج	role	دور
shade	ظل	branch	غصن / فرع
trunk	جذع (الشجرة)	traditional	تقليدي
selfish	اناني	recipe	وجبة طعام
ingredients	مكونات الطعام	flyer	منشور اعلاني

Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

protect	يحمي
hunt	يصطاد
survive	يبقى حيًا
appreciate	يقدر
ignore	يهمل / يتجاهل
fry	يقلّي
pour	يسكب / يصب
mix	يخلط
cook	يطبخ
chop	يقطع قطع صغيرة / يفرم

Past ماض

protected
hunted
survived
appreciated
ignored
fried
poured
mixed
cooked
chopped

Present مضارع

find	يجد
give	يعطي
hide	يختبئ
become	يصبح
take	يأخذ
bend	ينحني
gave back	يرد الجميل
wear	يرتدي
put	يضع
cut	يقطع

Past ماض

found
gave
hid
became
took
bent
gave back
wore
put
cut

Language notes

ملاحظات لغوية

ظروف التكرار Adverbs of Frequency

Usage الاستخدام

We use adverbs of frequency to talk about how often something happens.

نستخدم ظروف التكرار لمعرفة نسبة حدوث الفعل

always → usually → often → sometimes → rarely → never
(100%) (80%) (70%) (50%) (20%) (0%)

100%	always	I always look after my little sister. اعتنى دائماً باختي الصغيرة (افعل ذلك دائماً).
90%	usually	I am usually tired in the evening. اشعر عادة بالتعب في المساء. (في اوقات كثيرة وليس طوال الوقت)
70%	often	I don't often watch television. غالباً اشاهد التلفاز. (في اغلب الوقت)
50%	sometimes	I sometimes get up early in the summer vacation. احياناً استيقظ مبكراً في عطلة الصيف (نصف ايام الاسبوع)
20%	rarely	I rarely travel abroad. نادراً ما اسافر للخارج. (نادراً ما حدث ذلك)
0%	never	I never visit the Pyramids. لم ازر الاهرام ابداً (لم افعل ذلك ولا مرة)

- تأتي ظروف التكرار بعد فعل يكون (verb to be) وقبل الافعال الاخرى

Verb to be → Adverbs of frequency

Adverbs of frequency → Other verbs

ظرف التكرار يأتي قبل الفعل الأساسي

✓ I **often** play football.

✗ I play often football.

ولكن بعد فعل "to be" (am, is, are)

✓ She **is always** happy.

✗ She always is happy.



Answers to Paragraphs

1

Lesson 1

Life in the Nile Rive

Many animals live in the Nile River. Small fish eat plants. Big fish eat tiny creatures. Birds eat fish and insects. Crocodiles eat fish, birds, and large animals. All animals need food to live. The Nile is important for many living things.

2

Lesson 2

Your healthy habits

The desert is hot and dry. Many animals live there. Snakes eat small animals like rats. Camels eat plants to stay strong. Lizards eat insects for energy. Some animals hide under rocks during the day. Owls come out at night.

3

Lesson 3

Taking care of trees

Trees are very important for us. They give us shade and fresh air. We should water trees and protect their branches. Taking care of trees helps them grow strong and healthy. Everyone can help by caring for trees every day.

4

Lesson 4

My favorite food

Koshari is a traditional Egyptian dish. It has rice, lentils, and pasta. A spicy tomato sauce and crispy onions make it delicious. Many people enjoy eating Koshari because it is tasty and healthy.

5

Test on Unit 1

How to make Koshari

Koshari is a traditional Egyptian meal. First, you need to cook rice, pasta, and lentils. Then, add chickpeas and red sauce made with garlic and tomatoes. Finally, put crispy fried onions on top. Koshari is very tasty and has many healthy ingredients in one bowl.

A- Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

استمع واختر الاجابة الصحيحة :

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب



1. Small fish in the Nile eat (big animals - water plants - birds)
2. Crocodiles eat fish, birds, and sometimes animals. (large - small - water)
3. We must protect the river to help animals (swim - survive - fly)

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog:

اقرأ وأكمل :

survive - plants - animals - large

Ahmed : What do small fish in the Nile eat?

Laila : They eat water

Ahmed : And what do crocodiles eat?

Laila : They eat fish, birds, and sometimes animals.

Ahmed : Why is it important to protect the river?

Laila : Because it helps all the in the river.

Ahmed : Yes! Every animal needs food to

C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read the text and answer questions:

اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة :

The desert is hot and dry, but many animals live there. Snakes often eat small animals like rats or lizards. Camels live in the desert, too. They eat plants to stay strong. Lizards eat insects, which give them energy. Some animals hide under rocks to stay cool during the day. Others, like owls, come out at night when it is cooler. Each animal has an important role in the desert. They help nature stay in balance.

A: Choose the correct answer:

1. Snakes eat small animals like rats or

a owls

b insects

c camels

d lizards

2. Camels eat to stay strong.

- a** meat **b** plants **c** insects **d** snakes

3. Some animals come out at when it is cooler.

- a** morning **b** noon **c** night **d** sunset

B: Answer the following questions:

4. Why do some animals hide under rocks during the day?

5. What is the weather like in the desert?

D- Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. A is a special hat worn by kings or queens.

- a** shade **b** crown **c** trunk **d** branch

2. The tree gives us to rest under on a sunny day.

- a** trunk **b** branch **c** shade **d** crown

3. We sat under the tree to enjoy the cool

- a** trunk **b** crown **c** shade **d** selfish

4. The bird built its nest on a high of the tree.

- a** branch **b** crown **c** selfish **d** care for

5. It's not nice to be and think only about yourself.

- a** trunk **b** shade **c** selfish **d** branch

E- Writing

5 Rearrange the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. is - dry - The desert - and - hot.

2. eat - fish - Birds - small.

3. crocodiles - Huge - are scary.

4. animals - under - Some - rocks - hide.

5. and the tree - Tom - the best - became - of friends.

Test on Unit 1

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة ،

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



- Lily woke up in the morning.
☐ a late ☐ b early ☐ c at night ☐ d at noon
- She enjoyed the fresh air and to the birds.
☐ a talked ☐ b listened ☐ c ignored ☐ d shouted
- Lily walked slowly on the
☐ a road ☐ b path ☐ c grass ☐ d river
- She promised to come back and the plants.
☐ a cut ☐ b water ☐ c take care of ☐ d sell

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة ،

- The is a part that grows out from a tree's trunk.
☐ a shadow ☐ b time ☐ c branche ☐ d crown
- Koshari is a/an meal.
☐ a bad ☐ b salty ☐ c healthy ☐ d unhealthy
- A crown is a special worn by kings or queens .
☐ a bat ☐ b hat ☐ c rat ☐ d trunk

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

night - hot - sea - lizards

There are many animals in the desert. The desert is very dry and ①
 Snakes eat ② and small rats. Owls come out at ③ They
 don't come out during the day.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة ،

Koshari is a tasty Egyptian meal with many simple ingredients in one bowl. First, you need to cook rice in a pot with water. In another pot, prepare small pasta. Then, boil lentils in water. For the red sauce, fry some chopped garlic in oil, add tomato sauce, vinegar, and some spices. You also need to make crispy onions. First, cut them into thin slices. Then, fry them in oil until they turn brown and crunchy. After that, put the rice in a bowl and add the pasta and lentils on top. Then, add some chickpeas. Finally, pour the red sauce all over it, and put the crispy onions on top.

There are two more sauces you can add for more flavor. One is a spicy tomato sauce, and the other is Dakka which is made with garlic and vinegar. This mix of foods makes Koshari very yummy. Koshari is a traditional Egyptian food.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- To make the red sauce, you need to fry in oil first.
 a onions b garlic c lentils d pasta
- The crispy onions are fried until they become
 a soft b sweet
 c brown and crunchy d salty

B. Answer the following questions:

- What are the main ingredients used in Koshari?
- How do you make the crispy onions?
- What are the two additional sauces you can add to Koshari for more flavor?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

- cook - you - How - Koshari - do?
- need - make- You - crispy- onions - to.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- Snackes (eat never) plants.
- He (always is) clever at school.
- She (go always) to the park on Sundays.
- He (always cut) onions into thin slices.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- add the pasta and lentils on top
- koshari is a traditional egyptian food.

8 Write a paragraph of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

How to Make Koshari

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

First, you need to... - Then, add...

Unit 2



My Healthy Body

جسمي الصحي

Learning Outcomes

Speaking:

- Ask and answer questions about healthy habits. يسأل الطالب أسئلة عن عادات صحية ويجب عنها
- Talk about personal healthy habits. يتكلم الطالب عن العادات الشخصية الصحية
- Recognize and repeat one syllable words. يتعرف الطالب على كلمات ذات مقطع واحد ويرددها

Reading:

- Answer questions related to a text on healthy habits. يجيب الطالب عن أسئلة متعلقة بنص عن عادات صحية
- Discuss healthy habits based on the reading text. يناقش الطالب عادات صحية في نص القراءة

Listening:

- Identify and understand vocabulary related to the health. يتعرف الطالب على كلمات متعلقة بالصحة ويفهمها
- Listen to a dialog and answer comprehension questions. يستمع الطالب إلى محادثة ويجب عن أسئلة فهم

Writing:

- Distinguish between countable and uncountable nouns, and apply the correct determiners in context.

يُميِّز الطالب بين الأشياء المعدودة وغير المعدودة ويستخدم المحددات الصحيحة في سياق

- Write sentences on how to stay healthy. يكتب الطالب جملاً عن كيفية الحفاظ على الصحة
- Write a paragraph about a healthcare giver. يكتب الطالب موضوع تعبير عن مقدم الرعاية الصحية

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



heart

قلب



muscles

عضلات



lungs

الرئتان



bones

عظام



football

كرة القدم



exercise

يتدرب

increase energy

يزيد الطاقة

stressed

مضغوط / متوتر

mental health

الصحة العقلية / الصحة النفسية

reduce stress

يقلل الضغط / التوتر

regularly

بانتظام

sleep better

ينام بشكل أفضل

swimming

السباحة

tired

متعب

fit

لائق بدنيا



Other words

كلمات أخرى

organ

عضو

whole body

الجسد بالكامل

chest

صدر

exactly

بالضبط

great

عظيم

absolutely

بالأكيد

healthy

صحي / بصحة جيدة

mind

العقل

sports

الرياضة

part of

جزء من

in fact

في الحقيقة

Alright

حسنًا

Unit 2 My Healthy Body

Expressions, prepositions and phrases

تعبيرات وحروف جر وعبارات

take care of	يعتني بـ	stay healthy	يبقى بصحة جيدة
feel good	يشعر أنه بخير	get tired	يصبح متعب
play sports	يلعب رياضة	lose weight	يفقد وزن
make our bodies stronger	تجعل اجسادنا أقوى	go for a walk	يذهب للتمشية

Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماض	Present مضارع	Past ماض
increase يزيد	increased	grow تنمو / تكبر	grew
exercise يتمرّن	exercised	lose يفقد	lost
move يحرك - يتحرك	moved	feel يشعر	felt
try يحاول	tried	get يصبح	got
reduce يقلل	reduced	give يعطي	gave
breathe يتنفس	breathed	think يعتقد	thought
stay يبقى	stayed		

Definitions

تعريفات

fit	لائق بدنيا	being healthy and strong because you exercise تكون بصحة جيدة وقوي لأنك تتمرّن.
mental health	الصحة العقلية / الصحة النفسية	how you feel and think كيف تشعر وتفكر.
stressed	مضغوط	feeling unhappy or tired الشعور بعدم السعادة أو التعب.
lungs	رئتان	the organs ⁽¹⁾ in your chest ⁽²⁾ that help you breathe ⁽³⁾ الأعضاء التي في صدرك وتساعدك على التنفس.
muscles	عضلات	the parts of your body that help you move أجزاء في جسمك تساعدك على التنفس.

Arabic Meaning

١. أعضاء
٢. صدر
٣. يتنفس

Language notes

help + object مفعول + (to) + inf مصدر الفعل

1

يساعد

- Sports **help** us stay healthy. = Sports **help** us to stay healthy

What about + noun \ v.ing?

2

ماذا عن...؟
ما رأيك في...؟

- What about **going** for a walk?
- What about **our** mental health?

make + object مفعول + adjective صفة

3

يجعل

- It **makes** your heart strong.

Study the following

1 Why is it important to play sports?

- لماذا من المهم أن تلعب رياضة؟

2 Sports help us stay healthy and make our bodies stronger.

- تساعدنا الرياضة على الحفاظ على صحتنا وتجعل أجسادنا قوية.

3 It makes your heart strong and helps your muscles grow.

- إنها تجعل قلبك قويا وتساعد عضلاتك على النمو.

4 It makes your lungs strong.

- إنها تقوي رئتيك.

5 Sometimes I get tired when I play sports.

- أحيانا أشعر بالتعب عندما أمارس الرياضة.

6 Try eating some fruit before you exercise.

- حاول أكل بعض الفاكهة قبل التمرين.

7 Exercise helps you lose weight.

- تساعدك ممارسة التمارين على فقدان الوزن.

8 Exercising regularly helps you sleep better.

- تساعدك ممارسة التمارين باستمرار على النوم بشكل أفضل.

9 I think I will play sports more regularly.

- اعتقد انني سأمارس الرياضة بانتظام أكثر.

10 How about going for a walk together?

- ما رأيك في الذهاب للتمشية معا؟

11 How does football make you stronger?

- كيف لكرة القدم أن تجعلك قويا؟

12 Why is exercising regularly important?

- لماذا التمرين بانتظام مهم؟

1 Read and answer

اقرأ واجيب:

استمع إلى النص:



How do you take care of ⁽¹⁾ your health?

"Fit, Fast, and Feeling Good"

Mazen: Mom, why is it important to play sports?

أمي، ما أهمية ممارسة الرياضة؟

Mom: Well, sports help us stay healthy and make our bodies stronger.

حسنًا، الرياضة تساعدنا على الحفاظ على صحتنا وتقوي أجسامنا.

Mazen: Oh! So if I play football, will I be stronger?

أوه! إذا لعبت كرة القدم، هل سأكون أقوى؟

Mom: Yes, it makes your **heart**⁽¹⁾ strong and helps your muscles grow. It also **increases**⁽²⁾ energy.

نعم، إنها تقوي القلب وتساعد على نمو العضلات كما أنها تزيد من الطاقة.

Mazen: What about swimming?

ماذا عن السباحة؟

Mom: Swimming is very good, too! It makes your **lungs**⁽³⁾ strong. In fact, it helps your whole body

السباحة مفيدة جدًا أيضًا. إنها تجعل رئتيك قويتين. في الحقيقة، إنها تساعد جسمك بأكمله.

Mazen: Good, but sometimes I get **tired**⁽⁴⁾ when I play sports.

حسنًا، لكنني أشعر بالتعب أحيانًا عندما أمارس الرياضة.

Mom: That's normal. Try eating some fruit before you exercise to give you more energy.

هذا طبيعي، حاول تناول بعض الفاكهة قبل ممارسة الرياضة لتمتلك المزيد من الطاقة.

Mazen: Alright. Sports make us **fit**⁽⁵⁾ too, right?

حسنًا، الرياضة تزيد من لياقتنا البدنية أيضًا، أليس كذلك؟

Mom: Exactly! Exercise helps you lose weight and makes your bones stronger.

بالضبط، التمرين يساعد على إنقاص الوزن وتقوية العظام.

Mazen: What about our **mental health**⁽⁶⁾? Can sports help us with that?

ماذا عن صحتنا النفسية؟ هل يمكن للرياضة أن تساعدنا في ذلك؟

Mom: Absolutely! Exercising regularly helps you sleep better and reduces **stress**⁽⁷⁾.

بالطاقة! ممارسة الرياضة بانتظام تساعدنا على نوم أفضل وتقلل التوتر.

Mazen: That's great! I think I will play sports more regularly.

هذا رائع! أعتقد أنني سأمارس الرياضة بانتظام أكثر.

Mom: How about going for a walk together?

ما رأيك أن نذهب للتمشية معًا؟

Mazen: Now? Sure! I want to be healthy.

الآن؟ بالتأكيد! أريد أن أكون بصحة جيدة.

Arabic Meaning

- ١- قلب
- ٢- يزيد
- ٣- الرئتين
- ٤- متعب
- ٥- لائق بدنيًا
- ٦- الصحة النفسية
- ٧- التوتر

Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة :

1. How do you take care of your.....?
☐ a health ☐ b information ☐ c healthy ☐ d pollution
2. Sports help us healthy.
☐ a take ☐ b stay ☐ c lose ☐ d make
3. The is an important organ.
☐ a feeling ☐ b stress ☐ c sport ☐ d heart
4. Sports helps your grow.
☐ a desks ☐ b muscles ☐ c eyes ☐ d plants
5. The price of milk every year.
☐ a drives ☐ b talks ☐ c volunteers ☐ d increases
6. I always take of my plants.
☐ a care ☐ b away ☐ c in front ☐ d pair
7. Eating less sugar can help you lose
☐ a weight ☐ b information ☐ c news ☐ d way
8. The is the organs in your chest that help you breathe.
☐ a lung ☐ b eye ☐ c mind ☐ d heart
9. Exercising regularly helps you stress.
☐ a damage ☐ b reduce ☐ c bake ☐ d make
10. Drinking water increases your
☐ a information ☐ b news ☐ c air ☐ d energy
11. Regular exercise helps you weight.
☐ a reuse ☐ b buy ☐ c do ☐ d lose
12. My parents care of each other.
☐ a feed ☐ b take ☐ c talk ☐ d make

Unit 2 My Healthy Body

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

strong - health - muscles - stay

It is important to take care of your health. Sports help us to ① healthy and make our bodies stronger. You should practice a sport like football. It helps you be stronger. It also makes your body ② It can make your heart strong, too. It helps your ③ grow.

3 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Doing a sport is important for your health. Swimming is very good! It makes your lungs strong. In fact, it helps your whole body. If you feel tired while playing a sport, try eating some fruit before you exercise to give you more energy. Exercise helps you lose weight and makes your bones stronger. Exercising regularly helps you sleep better and reduces stress. If you want to be fit and healthy, you should do a sport.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Swimming makes your lungs.....
☐ a strong ☐ b grow ☐ c health ☐ d unhealthy
- The opposite of the underlined word "lose" is
☐ a increase ☐ b cut ☐ c play ☐ d do

B. Answer the following questions:

- What is the passage about?
- Why is doing a sport important?
- Summarize the text in one sentence.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make a sentence.

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. weight - you - Exercise - lose - helps.

2. strong - your - makes - lungs - Swimming.

3. important - is - sports - to - play - It.

4. our - health - about - mental - What ?

5. your - do - take - How - care - you - of - health?

6. does - football - How - make - stronger - you?

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. i want to be healthy

2. how can you keep fit

6 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

Taking care of your health

play sports - stay healthy

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



wake up late	يستيقظ متأخرًا	watch TV	يشاهد التلفزيون
do exercise	يؤدي تمارين رياضية	play football	يلعب كرة القدم
wake up early	يستيقظ مبكرًا	eat fruit and vegetables	يأكل فاكهة وخضراوات
eat dinner	يأكل العشاء	journey	رحلة
vitamins	فيتامينات	habits	عادات
soda	مياه غازية		
past	ماضي		

Other words كلمات أخرى

chips	بطاطس شيبسي / بطاطس مقلية	picnic	نزهة خلوية
a walk	تمشية	snack	وجبة خفيفة
changes	تغييرات	fridge	ثلاجة
unhealthy	غير صحي	orange juice	عصير برتقال
watermelon	بطيخة	sweet	حلوى
mind	عقل / ذهن	burgers	برجر
left	متبقي		

Expressions, prepositions and phrases تعبيرات وحروف جر وعبارات

do sports	يمارس رياضة	used to + inf	اعتاد أن
watch TV all day	يشاهد التلفاز طوال اليوم	give vitamins	يعطي فيتامينات
on weekends	في عطلات نهاية الأسبوع	followed by a walk	متبوع بالتمشية
a healthier life	حياة صحية أكثر	instead of	بدلاً من

Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماض	Present مضارع	Past ماض
change يتغير	changed	eat يأكل	ate
happen يحدث	happened	give يعطي	gave
replace يستبدل	replaced	buy يشتري	bought
fry يقللي	fried	wake up يستيقظ	woke up
share يشارك	shared	drink يشرب	drank
bake يخبز	baked		

Language notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 change (verb فعل / noun اسم) - تغيير - تغيير

- Have you **changed** your habits too?
- These **changes** give me more energy.

2 used to + inf اعتاد أن

- I **used to** watch TV all day.

3 I'd like to + inf. تعلى اريد ان فعل في المصدر

- I'd **like to** share how my habits have changed.

Study the following

1 It makes me feel strong and happy.

- ذلك يجعلك تشعر بالقوة والسعادة.

2 I used to watch TV all day.

- اعتدت أن أشاهد التلفاز طوال اليوم.

3 Now I play football with friends every Saturday.

- الآن ألعب كرة القدم مع أصدقائي كل سبت.

4 I drink a lot of water instead of soda.

- أشرب كثيراً من الماء بدلاً من المياه الغازية.

5 We grill or bake food instead of frying.

- نشوي أو نخبز الطعام بدلاً من قليه.

6 These changes give me more energy.

- اعطتني هذه التغييرات طاقة أكثر.

7 What is Adam's favorite snack?

- ما هي وجبة آدم الخفيفة المفضلة؟

1 Read the text

اقرأ النص:

استمع إلى النص:



Adam's Journey to a Healthier Life

Hello! I'm Adam, and I'd like to **share**⁽¹⁾ how my habits have changed. In the past, I woke up late on weekends and didn't exercise much. Now, I wake up early and exercise every morning—it makes me feel strong and happy. I used to watch TV all day, but now I play football with friends every Saturday.

Arabic Meaning

١. يشارك
٢. وجبات خفيفة
٣. بدلاً من
٤. يشوي
٥. القلي
٦. متبوع

مرحباً! أنا آدم، وأود أن أشارككم كيف تغيرت عاداتي. في الماضي، كنت استيقظ متأخراً في عطلات نهاية الأسبوع ولا أمارس الرياضة كثيراً. الآن، أستيقظ باكراً وأمارس الرياضة كل صباح، فهذا يشعرني بالقوة والسعادة. كنت أشاهد التلفاز طوال اليوم، لكنني الآن أعب كرة القدم مع أصدقائي كل سبت.

Before, I loved chips, burgers, and sweets. Now, I eat more fruits and vegetables, which give me important vitamins. My favorite **snacks**⁽²⁾ are apples, bananas, and carrots. And I drink water **instead of**⁽³⁾ soda.

في السابق، كنت أحب البطاطس المقلية والبرجر والحلويات. الآن، أتناول المزيد من الفاكهة والخضراوات، التي تزودني بفيتامينات مهمة. وجباتي الخفيفة المفضلة هي التفاح والموز والجزر. واشرب الماء بدلاً من المشروبات الغازية.



My family's habits changed too—we **grill**⁽⁴⁾ or bake food instead of **frying**⁽⁵⁾ like we used to do in the past, and we eat dinner early, **followed**⁽⁶⁾ by a walk. These changes give me more energy and help me feel better. Have you changed your habits too?

تغيرت عادات عائلتي أيضاً، فنحن نشوي الطعام أو نخبزه بدلاً من القلي كما كنا نفعل في الماضي. وبتناول العشاء باكراً، ثم نمشي. هذه التغييرات تعطيني المزيد من الطاقة وتساعدني على الشعور بتحسن. هل غيرت عاداتك أيضاً؟

Language in use

الاسماء المعدودة وغير المعدودة

Countable noun الاسم المعدود

uncountable noun الاسم غير المعدود

- هو اسم له مفرد وله جمع:

boy - boys book - books

- في حالة المفرد نضع قبله **a \ an**:

a boy - a book - an apple - an uncle

- يمكن ان يسبقه رقم في المفرد والجمع:

one boy - two boys - four boys

- هو اسم ليس مفرد وليس له جمع:

water - sand - oil - juice

- لا نضع قبله **a \ an**:

a water (x) a juice (x)

- لا يمكن أن يسبقه رقم في المفرد والجمع:

one water (x)

متى نضع **a \ an**- نضع **a** امام الاسم المفرد المعدود الذي يبدأ بصوت

ساكن مثل:

a banana - a cat - a door - a fan - a vet

- نضع **an** قبل الاسم المفرد المعدود الذي يبدأ بصوت

متحرك مثل:

an apple - an orange - an umbrella

لاحظ:

- إذا بدأت الكلمة بحرف ساكن صامت بعده صوت متحرك

نضع قبلها **an**:

an hour

في الكلمات التي تبدأ بحرف الـ **u**1- إذا بدأت بـ **short u** نضع قبلها **a**:

an uncle - an umbrella

2- إذا بدأت بـ **long u** تنطق مثل **U** كما في الابدعيةونضع قبلها **an**:

a uniform - a university

أمثلة الاسماء غير المعدودة

1- السوائل:

oil - water - juice

2- المواد الدراسية:

English - Arabic - physics - science

3- بعض الأطعمة:

meat - أرز - wheat - لحم - rice

4- الاسماء المجردة:

love الحب

5- الفازات والمساحيق:

salt ملح - sugar سكر - sand رمل

- أكسجين - air - oxygen - هواء

6- بعض الاسماء مثل:

news معلومات - information - اخبار

furniture أثاث منزلي - money نقود

بعض **some**

- تأتي مع الاسم غير المعدود أو المعدود الجمع في الجملة المثبتة:

- There is **some** juice.- There are **some** apples.أي **any**

- تأتي مع الاسم غير المعدود أو المعدود الجمع في الجملة المنفية والسؤال:

- She does not have **any** bread.- There aren't **any** apples left.- Do you have **any** juice?

Checkup Exercises ✓

1 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. Does she have..... **(some)** glasses?
2. I eat **(some)** banana every day.
3. She eats **(some)** egg in the morning.
4. She drank **(any)** water.
5. There aren't **(some)** books.
6. Can I have **(an)** glass of water?
7. Yasser needs **(a)** umbrella.

Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Adam plays with his friends every Saturday. SB
☐ a snacks ☐ b dinner ☐ c football ☐ d walk
2. Adam drinks a lot of water instead of SB
☐ a soda ☐ b air ☐ c coins ☐ d vegetables
3. Fruits and vegetables give us important SB
☐ a vitamins ☐ b sports ☐ c sleep ☐ d soda
4. Healthy habits are important for our and minds. SB
☐ a weekend ☐ b fruit ☐ c past ☐ d bodies
5. My friends and I often exercise together on weekends.
☐ a do ☐ b make ☐ c take ☐ d fry
6. I up late on weekends.
☐ a woke ☐ b climb ☐ c walk ☐ d grow
7. She likes to every morning.
☐ a turn ☐ b fly ☐ c use ☐ d exercise
8. I to watch TV all day, but now I play football.
☐ a use ☐ b using ☐ c uses ☐ d used
9. I eat an apple as a between meals.
☐ a snake ☐ b snack ☐ c star ☐ d breakfast
10. I need to change my to be healthy.
☐ a habits ☐ b sports ☐ c TV ☐ d friends
11. She needed a \ an after dinner.
☐ a walk ☐ b soil ☐ c chips ☐ d food
12. We should grill food frying to stay healthy.
☐ a again with ☐ b followed by ☐ c sure of ☐ d instead of
13. What are your plans for the?
☐ a habits ☐ b minds ☐ c weekends ☐ d bodies

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

grill - habits - frying - walk

In the past, I woke up late on weekends and didn't exercise much. Now, I wake up early and exercise every morning. I used to watch TV all day, now I play football. My family's ① changed, too. We ② or bake food instead of frying. We eat dinner early, followed by a ③

3 Put the words in the correct order to make a sentence.

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. more - give - These - me - energy - changes.

Unit 2 My Healthy Body

2. weekends - I - late - on - up - woke.
3. Saturday - play - with - football - friends - I - every.
4. vitamins - vegetables - give - and - me - Fruits - important.
5. instead of - food - grill - or - frying - We - bake.

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. I have (an) watermelon. SB
2. There is (any) milk in the fridge. SB
3. She ate (a) apple yesterday. SB
4. I don't have (some) food at home. SB
5. Is there (some) orange juice left in the fridge? SB
6. She bought (an) bottle of water. SB
7. Omar will buy (an) apples for the picnic. SB
8. Would you like (any) orange juice? SB
9. I have (any) water if I'm thirsty.
10. There is (a) milk in the fridge.
11. There (isn't) any chairs left.
12. Did you see (some) birds?
13. There isn't (some) sugar in my tea.
14. I don't have (some) sugar.
15. We saw (any) beautiful flowers.
16. I would like (an) orange juice.

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. My family s habits changed
2. What is adam's favorite snack

6 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

Your journey to a healthier life

in the past - exercise

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



pump	مضخة	oxygen	أكسجين
organ	عضو	nutrients	عناصر غذائية
fist	قبضة اليد	carbon dioxide	ثاني أكسيد الكربون
waste	بقايا - نفايات	cell	خلية
blood vessels	الأوعية الدموية	tube	أنبوب
stress	الضغط / التوتر	hurt	يؤذي / يؤلم
muscle	عضلة	heart	قلب
pump blood	يضخ الدم	exercise	التمرين

Other words كلمات أخرى

super	خارق / فائق	alive	على قيد الحياة
size	حجم	tips	نصائح
job	وظيفة	powerful	قوي
gas	غاز	tightly	بإحكام
waste products	فضلات		

Expressions, prepositions and phrases تعبيرات وحروف جر وعبارات

carry blood to	ينقل الدم إلى	get sick	يمرض
takes away waste	يتخلص من الفضلات	do a job	يؤدي مهمة
our body's super pump	مضخة جسمنا الفائقة	(be) located in	يقع في
to all parts of the body	إلى كل أجزاء الجسم	keep you from	تحميك من
		keep us alive	تبقينا أحياء
		bad for	مضر لـ

Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماض	Present مضارع	Past ماض
beat ينبض	beat	take away يتخلص من - يزيل	took away
keep يحافظ على	kept	hurt يؤذي - يجرح	hurt
grow ينمو - يكبر	grew	run يجري	ran

Definitions

تعريفات

organ عضو	a body part that does a job	جزء من الجسم يؤدي وظيفته.
blood vessels أوعية دموية	tubes ⁽¹⁾ that carry blood through ⁽²⁾ the body	أنابيب تحمل الدم إلى جميع أنحاء الجسم.
fist قبضة اليد	a hand when it is tightly closed ⁽³⁾	عندما تكون اليد مغلقة بإحكام.
oxygen أكسجين	a gas ⁽⁴⁾ that we breathe	غاز نتنفسه.
nutrients عناصر غذائية	give us energy that helps our bodies grow	تمدنا بالطاقة التي تساعد أجسامنا على النمو.

Arabic Meaning

١. أنابيب
٢. خلال
٣. مغلقة بإحكام
٤. غاز

Study the following

- 1 The heart is one of the most important organs. - القلب هو أحد أهم الأعضاء.
- 2 It is about the size of your fist. - حجمه حوالي حجم قبضة يدك.
- 3 The heart's job is to pump blood to all parts of the body. - وظيفة القلب هي ضخ الدم إلى جميع أجزاء الجسم.
- 4 Blood carries oxygen and nutrients to every cell. - ينقل الدم الأكسجين والعناصر الغذائية إلى كل خلية.
- 5 It also takes away waste like carbon dioxide. - إنه يزيل الفضلات مثل ثاني أكسيد الكربون.
- 6 The heart pumps blood through blood vessels. - يضخ القلب الدم عبر الأوعية الدموية.
- 7 The heart is a strong muscle that keeps us alive. - القلب عضلة قوية تبقينا على قيد الحياة.
- 8 Too much stress can hurt your heart. - الكثير من التوتر يمكن أن يؤذي قلبك.
- 9 Exercise helps your heart pump better. - التمارين تساعد قلبك على الضخ بشكل أفضل.
- 10 You can take care of your heart. - يمكنك الاعتناء بقلبك.

1 Read the text, below.

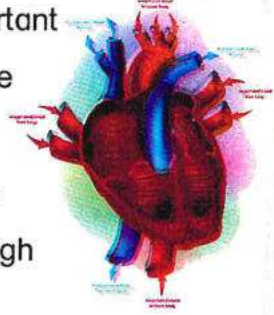
اقرأ النص.

استمع إلى النص.



Our Body's Super Pump!

We have an amazing body. The heart is one of the most important **organs**⁽¹⁾ of our body. It is about the size of your **fist**⁽²⁾. The heart's job is to **pump blood**⁽³⁾ to all parts of the body. Blood carries **oxygen**⁽⁴⁾ and **nutrients**⁽⁵⁾ to every cell. It also takes away waste like **carbon dioxide**⁽⁶⁾. The heart pumps blood through **blood vessels**⁽⁷⁾, which are like small tubes.



لدينا جسد رائع. القلب من أهم أعضاء أجسامنا، بحجم قبضة اليد تقريباً. وظيفته ضخ الدم إلى جميع أنحاء الجسم.

يحمل الدم الأكسجين والعناصر الغذائية إلى كل خلية، كما يتخلص من الفضلات كثنائي أكسيد

الكربون. يضخ القلب الدم عبر الأوعية الدموية، التي تشبه الأنابيب الصغيرة.

Arabic Meaning

- ١- أعضاء
- ٢- قبضة اليد
- ٣- يضخ الدم
- ٤- أكسجين
- ٥- عناصر غذائية
- ٦- ثاني أكسيد الكربون
- ٧- الأوعية الدموية
- ٨- عضلة
- ٩- ضغط / توتر
- ١٠- يضر / يؤذي

The heart is a strong **muscle**⁽⁸⁾ that keeps us alive. Too much **stress**⁽⁹⁾ can **hurt**⁽¹⁰⁾ your heart, so it's important to keep it healthy. You can take care of your heart by eating good food, sleeping well, and drinking a lot of water. Also, exercise helps your heart pump better and keeps you from getting sick.

القلب عضلة قوية تُبقينا على قيد الحياة. قد يؤدي التوتر الشديد لقلبك، لذا من المهم الحفاظ

عليه بصحة جيدة. يمكنك العناية بقلبك من خلال تناول طعام صحي، والنوم جيداً، وشرب الكثير من الماء. كما أن ممارسة الرياضة

تُساعد قلبك على ضخ الدم بشكل أفضل، وتحميك من الأمراض.

If you follow these tips, your heart will stay strong. It may be small, but it is very powerful!

إذا اتبعت هذه النصائح، سيبقى قلبك قوياً. قد يكون صغيراً، لكنه قوي جداً!



Pronunciation

- A syllable is a word part with one vowel sound. It can have one or more vowel letters but only one vowel sound.

● المقطع الصوتي هو جزء من الكلمة يحتوي على صوت متحرك واحد على الأقل. يمكن أن يحتوي على صوت متحرك واحد أو أكثر ولكنه يجب أن يكون هناك صوت متحرك واحد على الأقل.

- Words like bread (5 letters) and pot (3 letters) look different but both have one syllable because they only have one vowel sound.

● كلمات مثل bread مكونة من خمسة احرف وكلمة pot مكونة من ثلاثة احرف يبدو انهما مختلفتان ولكن كلاهما يحتوي على مقطع صوتي واحد لأن بهما صوتاً متحركاً واحداً.

one - syllable words:

● كلمات بها مقطع صوتي واحد:



jump

يقفز



arm

ذراع



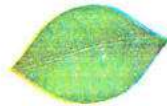
bread

خبز



feed

يُطعم



leaf

ورقة شجر



tree

شجرة

2 Circle the word that has one syllable.

ضع دائرة على الكلمة التي تحتوي على مقطع صوتي واحد:

1	basket	pencil	apple	run
2	tree	finger	banana	rabbit
3	fish	mother	elephant	lesson
4	jump	eraser	happy	jacket
5	hungry	hat	yellow	sofa

Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. are tubes that carry blood through the body. SB
 a Fists b Hearts c Snacks d Blood vessels
2. When does the heart faster? SB
 a beat b do c turn d run
3. The heart's job is to blood to all parts of the body. SB
 a pump b waste c grow d carry
4. You should follow these useful to be strong.
 a wastes b tips c tubes d gases
5. The heart is about the size of your
 a fist b arm c head d foot
6. Blood carries and nutrients to every cell.
 a oil b tube c heart d oxygen
7. A \ An is a body part that does a job.
 a flag b tight c fish d organ
8. Our body has billions of.....
 a hearts b gases c fists d cells
9. The heart away waste like carbon dioxide.
 a takes b makes c grows d tries

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

hurt - organs - grow - fist

We have an amazing body. The heart is one of the most important ¹ of our body. It is about the size of your ² The heart's job is to pump blood to all parts of the body. The heart is a strong muscle that keeps us alive. Too much stress can ³ your heart, so it's important to keep it healthy.

3 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

The heart is a strong muscle that keeps us alive. Too much stress can hurt your heart, so it's important to keep it healthy. You can take care of your heart by eating good food, sleeping well, and drinking a lot of water. Also, exercise helps your heart

Unit 2 My Healthy Body

pump better and keeps you from getting sick. The heart's job is to pump blood to all parts of the body. Blood carries oxygen and nutrients to every cell. It also **takes away** waste like carbon dioxide. The heart pumps blood through blood vessels.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- You can take care of your heart by
a sleeping well **b** planting **c** drinking soda **d** smoking
- The underlined word "takes away" means
a grows **b** wins **c** removes **d** fries

B. Answer the following questions:

- What is the passage about?
- What is the job of the heart?
- What does blood carry?

4 Put the words in the correct order to make a sentence.

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة :

- the size - The heart - is - of - your - about - fist.
- your body - a strong - is - in - muscle - The heart.
- pump - your - helps - Exercise - heart - better.
- blood - through - pumps - blood vessels - The heart.
- is - important - one - the most - The heart - organs - of.

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي :

- they go there on weekends
- water is good for your heart

6 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن :

Your heart

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

organ - pump blood

Lesson 4&5 ★ Life Savers in Action

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



healthcare	الرعاية الصحية	pharmacist	صيدلي
hero	بطل	paramedic	مسعف (الإسعاف الطبي)
life savers	منقذون	patient	مريض
toothpaste	معجون اسنان	treatment	علاج
emergencies	الطوارئ	stethoscope	سماعة الطبيب
doctor	طبيب	diagnose	يشخص مرض

Other words كلمات أخرى

community	مجتمع	nurse	ممرضة
lives	ارواح	vision	رؤية
illness / disease	مرض	knowledge	معرفة
skill	مهارة	role	دور
pleased	مسرور	medicine	دواء
safely	بأمان	advice	نصيحة
cause	سبب	kindness	طيبة / لطف
proud	فخور	rest	راحة
nervous	عصبي / متوتر	urgent	عاجل
skin	جلد	tiring	مُتعب
workers	عمال	daily	يوميًا

Expressions, prepositions and phrases تعبيرات وحروف جر وعبارات

day and night	ليلاً ونهاراً	around the clock	على مدار الساعة
give support	يعطي دعم	on the spot	فوراً / في الحال
play a very important role	يلعب دور هام	get enough rest	يحصل على فترات راحة كافية
give advice	يعطي نصيحة	brush your teeth	نظف اسنانك بالفرشاة
make sure	يتأكد	stop harmful habits	يتوقف عن العادات السيئة
show respect	يظهر احترام		

Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	
treat	يعالج
check	يفحص
provide	يزود بـ
respond	يستجيب لـ
identify	يحدد / يعرف
diagnose	يشخص
receive	يستلم / يستقبل
encourage	يشجع
transport	ينقل

Past ماض	
treated	
checked	
provided	
responded	
identified	
diagnosed	
received	
encouraged	
transported	

Present مضارع	
spend	يقضي
make sure	يتأكد
wear	يرتدي
give	يعطي
show	يبين

Past ماض	
spent	
made sure	
wore	
gave	
showed	

Definitions

تعريفات

work around the clock يعمل على مدار الساعة	work for long hours without much rest	Arabic Meaning ١. فوراً ٢. يحدد ٣. مرض
on the spot فوراً	immediately ⁽¹⁾	
diagnose يشخص	identify ⁽¹⁾ the cause of a problem or illness ⁽³⁾	

Study the following

1 Healthcare workers spend their lives helping others.

- يقضي العاملون في مجال الرعاية الصحية حياتهم في مساعدة الآخرين.

2 They keep people healthy and treat illnesses.

- إنهم يحافظون على صحة الناس ويعالجون الأمراض.

3 Doctors use their knowledge and skills to check patients.

- يستخدم الأطباء معرفتهم ومهاراتهم لفحص المرضى.

4 Nurses often work around the clock to give support and care for patients.

- غالباً ما يعمل الممرضون على مدار الساعة لتقديم الدعم والرعاية للمرضى.

5 Pharmacists play a very important role.

- يلعب الصيادلة دوراً بالغ الأهمية.

6 They make sure patients receive the correct medicine.

- يتأكدون من حصول المرضى على الدواء الصحيح.

7 These heroes work long hours with kindness.

- يعمل هؤلاء الأبطال لساعات طويلة بلطف.

8 Healthcare workers are really our everyday heroes.

- العاملون في مجال الرعاية الصحية هم حقاً أبطالنا كل يوم.

1 Read the text, below.

اقرأ النص:

استمع إلى النص:



Healthcare Heroes

Healthcare **workers**⁽¹⁾ —like doctors, nurses, **pharmacists**⁽²⁾, and **paramedics**⁽³⁾ are real-life **heroes**⁽⁴⁾ who spend their lives helping others. They work day and night to keep people healthy and treat illnesses. Doctors use their **knowledge**⁽⁵⁾ and skills to check patients, **diagnose**⁽⁶⁾ diseases, and provide **treatments**⁽⁷⁾. Nurses often work around the clock to give support and care for patients.



العاملون في مجال الرعاية الصحية - كالأطباء والممرضين والصيادلة والمسعفين - أبطال حقيقيون يكرسون حياتهم لمساعدة الآخرين. يعملون ليلاً نهاراً للحفاظ على صحة الناس وعلاج الأمراض. يستخدم الأطباء معلوماتهم ومهاراتهم لفحص المرضى وتشخيص الأمراض وتقديم العلاج. غالباً ما تعمل الممرضات على مدار الساعة لتقديم الدعم والرعاية للمرضى.

Pharmacists play a very important role, too. They make sure patients receive the correct medicine and give advice on how to use it safely.

يلعب الصيادلة أيضاً دوراً بالغ الأهمية، إذ يتأكدون من حصول المرضى على الدواء المناسب وتقديم النصائح حول كيفية استخدامه بأمان.

Paramedics respond quickly in **emergencies**⁽⁸⁾. They give help **on the spot**⁽⁹⁾ and take patients safely to hospitals. Healthcare workers also help us live healthier lives as they **encourage**⁽¹⁰⁾ us to eat healthy meals, stay active, play sports, and stop harmful habits.

يستجيب المسعفون بسرعة في حالات الطوارئ، ويقدمون المساعدة الفورية، وينقلون المرضى بأمان إلى المستشفيات. يساعدنا العاملون في مجال الرعاية الصحية أيضاً على عيش حياة أكثر صحة، حيث يشجعوننا على تناول وجبات صحية، والنشاط البدني، وممارسة الرياضة، والتوقف عن العادات الضارة.

These heroes work long hours with kindness. We should thank them by caring for our health and showing them respect. Healthcare workers are really our everyday heroes!

يعمل هؤلاء الأبطال لساعات طويلة بكل لطف، يجب أن نشكرهم من خلال الاهتمام بصحتنا وإظهار الاحترام لهم. العاملون في مجال الرعاية الصحية هم حقاً أبطالنا في كل يوم!

Arabic Meaning

١. العاملون في الرعاية الصحية
٢. صيادلة
٣. مسعفون
٤. أبطال
٥. معرفة
٦. يشخص
٧. علاج
٨. طوارئ
٩. فوراً
١٠. يشجع

TIP!

Writing non-fiction text

كتابة نص واقعي

When you write a non-fiction text, ask yourself:

عندما تكتب نص واقعي اسأل نفسك:

- Is the information true?
- Did I make anything up?
- Is my source reliable?

- ١- هل المعلومات صحيحة؟
- ٢- هل قمت بتأليف أي شيء؟
- ٣- هل مصادري موثوقة؟

TIP!

Non-Fiction writing should include:

كتابة نص واقعي ينبغي أن يحتوي على:

An introductory sentence: جملة مقدمة

- My neighbor, Selim, is a doctor at our local hospital."

Details that are all true: تفاصيل كلها حقيقية

- He wears a white coat and carries a stethoscope around his neck.

Adjectives: صفات

- "white", "big", "kind".

A closing sentence: جملة ختامية

- The work is tiring, but he's proud to be a doctor.

2 Create a poster about six healthy habits

انشى ملصق عن ستة عادات صحية:

Stay Healthy!

1



**Wash your hands
before and after eating**
اغسل يديك قبل وبعد الأكل

2



Eat fruits and vegetables regularly
تناول الفاكهة والخضراوات بانتظام

3



Drink enough water daily
اشرب كمية كافية من الماء يوميا

4



Exercise regularly
تمرن بانتظام

5



**Sleep early and
get enough rest**
نام مبكراً وخذ راحة كافية

6



**Brush your teeth
daily with toothpaste**
اغسل أسنانك يوميا بمعجون الأسنان

Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. are the parts of your body that help you move. SB
☐ a Lungs ☐ b Ears ☐ c Nutrients ☐ d Muscles
2. Stressed is when you feel unhappy or..... SB
☐ a tired ☐ b pleased ☐ c happy ☐ d relaxed
3. Sleep early and get enough..... SB
☐ a rest ☐ b walk ☐ c study ☐ d kindness
4. Brush your teeth daily with
☐ a toothpaste ☐ b medicine ☐ c stethoscope ☐ d glasses
5. Doctors and nurses their lives helping others.
☐ a design ☐ b take ☐ c spend ☐ d have
6. Doctors use their and skills to check patients.
☐ a posters ☐ b advice ☐ c news ☐ d knowledge
7. The doctor wears a white coat and carries a around his neck.
☐ a necklace ☐ b glasses ☐ c medicine ☐ d stethoscope
8. He always gives information.
☐ a reliable ☐ b relaxed ☐ c advice ☐ d tired
9. Doctors diseases, and provide treatment.
☐ a provide ☐ b support ☐ c give ☐ d diagnose
10. My father's job is....., but he's proud to be a doctor
☐ a kind ☐ b relaxed ☐ c pleased ☐ d tiring
11.make sure patients receive the correct medicine.
☐ a Pharmacists ☐ b Savers ☐ c Farmers ☐ d Teachers
12. We should thank health care workers andthem respect.
☐ a show ☐ b feel ☐ c provide ☐ d give

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

hurt - heroes - respect - kindness

Healthcare workers help us live healthier lives as they encourage us to eat healthy meals, stay active, play sports, and stop harmful habits. These heroes work long hours with ¹ We should thank them by caring for our health and showing them ² Healthcare workers are really our everyday ³ !

Unit 2 My Healthy Body

3 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة :

Doctors spend their lives helping others. They work day and night to keep people healthy and treat illnesses. They use their knowledge and skills to check patients, diagnose diseases, and provide treatments. Nurses help doctors in their work. **They** often **work around the clock** to give support and care for patients. Doctors help us live healthier lives as they encourage us to eat healthy meals, stay active, play sports, and stop harmful habits.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Doctors use their knowledge and skills to check patients, diseases.
a encourage **b** diagnose **c** keep **d** support
- The underlined word "They" refers to.....
a heroes **b** nurses **c** doctors **d** patients

B. Answer the following questions:

- Why do doctors work day and night?
- How do doctors help us live healthier lives?
- What do the words "**work around the clock**" mean?

4 Put the words in the correct order to make a sentence.

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة :

- the - work - often - around - **Nurses** - clock.
.....
- a very - play - important - **Pharmacists** - role.
.....
- helping - spend - lives - workers - others - **Healthcare** - their.
.....
- use - patients - knowledge - to - **Doctors** - check - their.
.....
- receive - make sure - the correct - **Pharmacists** - patients - medicine.
.....

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي :

- how can we thank doctors
- he s proud to be a teacher.

6 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن :

Healthcare Heroes

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

workers - doctors - nurses

Review



on Unit 2

Key vocabulary



swimming السباحة



tired متعب



heart قلب



muscles عضلات



lungs الرئتان



bones عظام



football كرة القدم



exercise يتدرب



fit لائق بدنيا

increase energy	يزيد الطاقة	reduce stress	يقلل الضغط / التوتر
mental health	الصحة العقلية / الصحة النفسية	sleep better	ينام بشكل أفضل
vitamins	فيتامينات	watch TV	يشاهد التلفزيون
soda	مياه غازية	play football	يلعب كرة القدم
wake up late	يستيقظ متأخراً	eat fruit and vegetables	يأكل فاكهة وخضراوات
do exercise	يؤدي تمارين رياضية	eat dinner	يأكل العشاء
wake up early	يستيقظ مبكراً	oxygen	أكسجين
habits	عادات	nutrients	عناصر غذائية
organ	عضو	carbon dioxide	ثاني أكسيد الكربون
fist	قبضة اليد		

Unit 2 My Healthy Body

waste	بقايا - نفايات	cell	خلية
blood vessels	الأوعية الدموية	tube	انبوب
stress	الضغط / التوتر	hurt	يؤذي / يؤلم
muscle	عضلة	heart	قلب
pump blood	يضخ الدم	exercise	التمرين
healthcare	الرعاية الصحية	pharmacist	صيدلي
hero	بطل	paramedic	مسعف (الإسعاف الطبي)
life savers	منقذون	patient	مريض
toothpaste	معجون اسنان	treatment	علاج
emergencies	الطوارئ	stethoscope	سماعة الطبيب
doctor	طبيب	diagnose	يشخص مرض

Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ	Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
increase يزيد	increased	lose يفقد	lost
exercise يتمرّن	exercised	feel يشعر	felt
reduce يقلل	reduced	think يعتقد	thought
breathe يتنفس	breathed	eat يأكل	ate
fry يقلي	fried	give يعطي	gave
share يشارك	shared	buy يشتري	bought
beat ينبض	beat	wake up يستيقظ	woke up
keep يحافظ على	kept	drink يشرب	drank
treat يعالج	treated	hurt يؤذي - يجرح	hurt
check يفحص	checked	spend يقضي	spent
identify يحدد / يعرف	identified	wear يرتدي	wore
diagnose يشخص	diagnosed	show يبين	showed
transport ينقل	transported	take away يتخلص من - يزيل	took away

Language in use

قواعد لغوية

الاسماء المعدودة وغير المعدودة Countable and uncountable nouns

Countable noun الاسم المعدود

uncountable noun الاسم غير المعدود

- هو اسم له مفرد وله جمع،
 boy - boys book - books
 - في حالة المفرد نضع قبله **a \ an**،
 a boy - a book - an apple - an uncle
 - يمكن ان يسبقه رقم في المفرد والجمع،
 one boy - two boys - four boys

- هو اسم ليس مفرد وليس له جمع،
 water - sand - oil - juice
 - لا نضع قبله **a \ an**،
 a water (x) a juice (x)
 - لا يمكن أن يسبقه رقم في المفرد والجمع،
 one water (x)

متى نضع **a \ an**

- نضع **a** امام الاسم المفرد المعدود الذي يبدأ بصوت ساكن مثل:
 a banana - a cat - a door - a fan - a vet
 - نضع **an** قبل الاسم المفرد المعدود الذي يبدأ بصوت متحرك مثل:
 an apple - an orange - an umbrella
 لاحظ،
 - إذا بدأت الكلمة بحرف ساكن صامت بعده صوت متحرك نضع قبلها **an**،

an hour

في الكلمات التي تبدأ بحرف الـ **u**

١- إذا بدأت بـ **short u** نضع قبلها **a**،
 an uncle - an umbrella
 ٢- إذا بدأت بـ **long u** تنطق مثل **U** كما في الابدجية ونضع قبلها **an**،
 a uniform - a university

بعض **some**

- تأتي مع الاسم غير المعدود أو المعدود الجمع في الجملة المثبتة،
 - There is **some** juice.
 - There are **some** apples.

أمثلة الاسماء غير المعدودة

١- السوائل: oil - water - juice
 ٢- المواد الدراسية: English - Arabic - physics - science
 ٣- بعض الأطعمة: meat لحم - rice أرز - wheat قمح
 ٤- الاسماء المجردة: love الحب
 ٥- الغازات والمساحيق: salt ملح - sugar سكر - sand رمل
 هواء air - أكسجين oxygen -
 ٦- بعض الاسماء مثل: news معلومات - information اخبار
 furniture أثاث منزلي - money نقود

أي **any**

- تأتي مع الاسم غير المعدود أو المعدود الجمع في الجملة المنفية والسؤال،
 - She does not have **any** bread.
 - There aren't **any** apples left.
 - Do you have **any** juice?



Answers to Paragraphs

1

Lesson 1

Taking care of your health

It is important to take care of your health. You should do a sport. Sports help us stay healthy and make our bodies stronger. It makes your heart strong and helps your muscles grow. It also increases energy.

2

Lesson 2

Your journey to a healthier life

I have changed my bad habits. In the past, I woke up late at 11 am. But now, I wake up early. It makes me feel strong and happy. I used to watch TV all day, but now I play football with friends every Saturday.

3

Lesson 3

Your heart

We have an amazing body. The heart is one of the most important organs of our body. It is about the size of your fist. It pumps blood to all parts of the body. Too much stress can hurt your heart, so it's important to keep it healthy.

4

Lessons 4&5

Healthcare Heroes

Healthcare workers spend their lives helping others. They work day and night to keep people healthy and treat illnesses. Doctors use their knowledge and skills to check patients, diagnose diseases, and provide treatments. Nurses often work around the clock to give support and care for patients.

5

Test

Healthy habits

To stay healthy, you should wash your hands before and after eating. Eat fruits and vegetables regularly. You should drink enough water daily. Sleep early and get enough rest. You should brush your teeth daily with toothpaste.

A- Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

استمع وأختَر:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. The is one of the most important organ of our body.

- a** eraser **b** tool **c** heart **d** building

2. The heart is about the size of your.....

- a** fist **b** eye **c** ear **d** nose

3. It pumps to all parts of the body.

- a** air **b** oxygen **c** blood **d** water

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog:

أقرأ وأكمل:

information - blood - organ - heart

Reem : What are you reading about?

Mai : I am reading about the

Reem : Tell me more about it.

Mai : It is an important

Reem : Why is it important?

Mai : It pumps to all parts of the body.

C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read the text and answer questions:

اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة:

Pharmacists spend their lives helping others. They work day and night to keep people healthy. They play a very important role. They make sure patients receive the correct medicine and give advice on how to use it safely.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. Pharmacists spend their helping others.

- a** medicine **b** tools **c** shops **d** lives

Unit 2 My Healthy Body

2. They help people keep

a healthy

b tired

c sick

d pleased

B: Choose the correct answer:

3. What's the best title for the passage?

4. Why are pharmacists important?

5. What do pharmacists give patients?

D- Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة :

1. Doctors diseases, and provide treatments.

a have

b use

c diagnose

d support

2. There isn't cheese in the fridge.

a a

b an

c any

d some

3. It's healthy to drink a lot of water instead of

a soda

b milk

c juice

d fruit

4. I bought green notebook.

a a

b an

c some

d any

5. How do you take of your health?

a care

b away

c up

d out

E- Writing

5 Rearrange the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة :

1. stay - us - help - Sports - healthy.

2. all - They - TV - watch - day - used to.

3. an egg - She - in - eats - the morning.

4. in - quickly - respond - emergencies - Paramedics.

5. through - blood - The heart - blood vessels - pumps.

Test on Unit 2

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. Rahma lives in

- ☐ a Aswan ☐ b Cairo ☐ c Giza ☐ d Alexandria

2. She lives with her

- ☐ a father ☐ b sister ☐ c mother ☐ d parents

3. Her father is a

- ☐ a pharmacist ☐ b doctor ☐ c paramedic ☐ d vet

4. Her father helps patients receive the correct

- ☐ a money ☐ b gifts ☐ c medicine ☐ d advice

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. To work around the clock means to work

- ☐ a in a room with a clock ☐ b for long time without much rest
☐ c while watching a clock ☐ d wearing a watch

2. Lungs are the organs in your chest that help you

- ☐ a think ☐ b move ☐ c breathe ☐ d eat

3. The doctor used a to listen to my heart.

- ☐ a stethoscope ☐ b toothbrush ☐ c telephone ☐ d tablet

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

diagnose - illnesses - spot - skills

Doctors and Nurses spend their lives helping others. They work day and night to keep people healthy and treat ① Doctors use their knowledge and ② to check patients, ③ diseases, and provide treatments. Nurses often work around the clock to give support and care for patients.

ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة. Help your child deal with such questions.

Unit 2 My Healthy Body

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجيب عن الأسئلة:

Once there were two boys who had some bad habits. They loved to eat sweets all day and stay up late playing games. One morning, they decided things needed to be changed. They wanted to feel strong and happy! They decided to wake up early every day. This gave them time to play a sport before school. They started to eat healthy food like fruits and vegetables. They remembered to drink a lot of water, too. They made sure to sleep early each night. Soon, they felt much healthier and happier!

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The two boys stayed up late
a studying **b** watching TV **c** playing games **d** exercising
- The underlined word "They" refers to
a fruits and vegetables **b** games **c** bad habits **d** the boys

B. Answer the following questions:

- Why did the two boys decide to wake up early?
- What were the things that needed to be changed?
- Why did they decide to change?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make a sentence.

- play - is - it - Why - important - to - sports?
ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جملة:
- vegetables - Ahmed - fruits - now - more - and - eats.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- Can I have (**a**) tea, please?
اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:
- I carry (**a**) umbrella when it rains.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- nutrients give people energy
- would you like to have some coffee

8 Write a paragraph of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding words:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Healthy habits

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

wash your hands - enough water daily



When Nature Changes

عندما تتغير الطبيعة

Learning Outcomes

Speaking:

- Describe different weather conditions - يصف الطالب حالات الطقس المختلفة
- Talk about past events using the past simple tense - يتحدث الطالب عن أحداث سابقة باستخدام زمن الماضي البسيط
- Recognize and repeat vowel digraph in common words - يتعرف الطالب على مجموعات الحروف المتحركة في الكلمات الشائعة ويرددها.

Reading:

- Answer comprehension questions on extreme weather conditions - يجيب الطالب عن أسئلة الفهم المتعلقة بحالات الطقس القاسية
- Identify elements (characters and moral) in a fictional story - يتعرف الطالب على عناصر القصة الخيالية (الشخصيات والدروس المستفادة)

Listening:

- Answer questions based on conversations about environmental changes - يجيب الطالب عن أسئلة خاصة بمحادثات حول التغيرات البيئية
- Identify vocabulary related to weather in a listening text - يتعرف الطالب على المفردات المتعلقة بالطقس في نص استماع

Writing:

- Complete sentences using the past simple tense correctly - يكمل الطالب جمل باستخدام زمن الماضي البسيط بشكل صحيح
- Write a fiction story - يكتب الطالب قصة خيالية

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



thunderstorm

عاصفة رعدية



sandstorm

عاصفة رملية



flood

فيضان



drought

جفاف



wildfire

حريق الغابات



heat wave

موجة حارة

news

damage

spread

أخبار

يتلف/ يدمر

ينتشر

stuck

planet

عالق

كوكب

Other words

كلمات أخرى

scary

living room

China

farmer

forest

wind

home

safe

terrible = awful!

مخيف

غرفة المعيشة

الصين

فلاح

غابة

رياح

موطن/ بيت

امن

فظيع/ رهيب

streets

city

no rain

crops

dry

mountain

quickly

a few

شوارع

مدينة

بدون مطر

محاصيل

جاف

جبل

بسرعة

قليل

Expressions, prepositions and phrases

تعابير وحروف جر وعبارات

cars got stuck	علقت السيارات	in U.S.A.	في الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية
hear about	يسمع عن..	Let's learn more about	هيا نتعلم المزيد عن
look scary	يبدو مخيف	What a pity!	يا للأسف!
stay with us	يبقى معنا	close to	قريب لـ

Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماض	Present مضارع	Past ماض
cover يغطي	covered	strike يضرب	struck
look يبدو/ينظر	looked	hear يسمع	heard
damage يدمر	damaged	have to يضطر إلي	had to
flood فيفيض	flooded	get stuck يتعلق/ ينحسر	got stuck
stay يبقى	stayed	lose يفقد/ يخسر	lost
hope يتمنى	hoped	learn يتعلم	learnt
help يساعد	helped	spread ينتشر	spread
		burn down يحرق	burned / burnt down

Definitions

تعريفات

A wildfire حرائق الغابات	burns through forests ⁽¹⁾ and homes. حرائق في الغابات والمنازل.
In a thunderstorm في عاصفة رعدية	Children are afraid of the lightning ⁽²⁾ . يخاف الاطفال من البرق.
A sandstorm عاصفة رملية	is a severe ⁽³⁾ wind that carries sand and dust ⁽⁴⁾ through the air making it hard to breathe. رياح شديدة تحمل الغبار في الهواء مما يجعل التنفس صعب.

Arabic Meaning

١. غابات
٢. البرق
٣. شديد
٤. غبار

Unit 3 When Nature Changes

A flood فيضان	is when there's too much water covering dry land. يحدث عندما يكون الماء أكثر من اللازم ويغطي الأرض الجافة.	٥. درجة الحرارة
In a heat wave في موجة حارة	The temperature ⁽⁵⁾ is dangerously high for days. درجة الحرارة مرتفعة بشكل خطر لأيام.	
A drought جفاف	happens when there is no rain for a long time. يحدث عندما لا يكون هناك مطر لفترة طويلة.	

Language notes

- We help our **planet**.
- We **plant** rice.
- It **looked scary**.

ملاحظات لغوية

1

planet
كوكب / نبات

2

Look+adj
يبدو

Study the following

- 1 Did you hear about the flood?
هل سمعت عن الفيضان؟
- 2 The water covered the streets.
غطى الماء الشوارع.
- 3 Many cars got stuck.
علقت العديد من السيارات.
- 4 His house was damaged.
تضرر منزله.
- 5 The water flooded his living room.
غمرت المياه غرفة المعيشة.
- 6 He had to stay with us for a few days.
اضطر للبقاء معنا عدة أيام.
- 7 Farmers can't grow crops because there's no rain.
الفلاحون لا يستطيعون زراعة المحاصيل لأنه لا يوجد مطر.
- 8 A wildfire is spreading in U.S.A.
حريق غابات ينتشر في الولايات المتحدة.
- 9 Many trees burned down.
احتترقت العديد من الأشجار.
- 10 Animals lost their homes.
فقدت الحيوانات منازلها.

1 Read and answer

اقرأ وأجب:

When Nature Strikes!

عندما تضرب الطبيعة

Mazen : Dina, did you hear about the **flood**⁽¹⁾ in our city last week? It was terrible.

مازن: هل سمعت يا دينا عن الفيضان في مدينتنا الأسبوع الماضي؟ لقد كان فظيلاً.

Dina : Yes, Mazen! I saw it on the news.

The water covered the streets, and many cars got stuck. It looked scary.

دينا: نعم يا مازن! رأيته في الأخبار. غطى الماء الشوارع، وعُلقت العديد من السيارات، كان يبدو مخيفاً.

Mazen : Yes, my uncle's house was damaged.

The water flooded his living room, and he had to stay with us for a few days.

مازن: نعم، تضرر منزل عمي. غمرت المياه غرفة المعيشة، واضطر للبقاء معنا لعدة أيام.



Dina : That's so sad. I hope he's okay now. Floods are terrible. And now there's a **drought**⁽²⁾ — no rain in China for months! Farmers can't grow crops because there's no water.

دينا: هذا محزن جداً. أأمل أن يكون بخير الآن. الفيضانات فظيعة. والآن هناك جفاف — لم تهطل أمطار في الصين منذ شهور! لا يستطيع الفلاحون زراعة المحاصيل حيث لا يوجد ماء.

Arabic Meaning

١. فيضان
٢. جفاف
٣. حرائق الغابات
٤. رياح
٥. كوكب

Mazen : Yes, droughts are awful! The land gets so dry that animals can't find water. And I heard that a **wildfire**⁽³⁾ is spreading in the forest in U.S.A.

مازن: نعم، الجفاف سيء جداً! تصبح الأرض جافة جداً لدرجة أن الحيوانات لا تستطيع إيجاد ماء. وسمعت أن حريق غابات ينتشر في غابة بالولايات المتحدة.

Dina : Oh no! Is it close to the mountains?

دينا: أوه لا! هل هو قريب من الجبال؟

Mazen : Yes, and it spreads quickly because it's dry there, and the **winds**⁽⁴⁾ are so strong. Sadly, many trees burned down, and animals lost their homes.

مازن: نعم، وينتشر بسرعة لأنه يوجد جفاف هناك، والرياح قوية جداً. وللأسف، احترقت العديد من الأشجار، وفقدت الحيوانات منازلها.

Dina : What a pity! Let's learn more about how we can stay safe and help our **planet**⁽⁵⁾.

دينا: يا للأسف! دعنا نتعلم أكثر عن كيفية البقاء بأمان ومساعدة كوكبنا.

Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة :

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. A big hit our town.

- a** storm **b** flood **c** fire **d** drought

2. Water covered the

- a** buildings **b** trees **c** roads **d** sky

3. Some cars got

- a** fixed **b** stuck **c** sold **d** cleaned

4. People had to leave their

- a** schools **b** homes **c** parks **d** jobs

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة :

1. I was in my car during the flood. I couldn't move.

- a** spread **b** stuck **c** active **d** funny

SB

2. The wildfire quickly in the forest.

- a** protected **b** bought **c** helped **d** spread

SB

3. I heard on the that there was a bad storm in the village.

- a** news **b** song **c** flood **d** storm

SB

4. Medhat's house was after the storm hit it.

- a** spread **b** planted **c** damaged **d** grow

SB

5. To save our we must keep it clean.

- a** plant **b** planet **c** plane **d** plan

SB

6. A lot of trees burned down in a

- a** wildfire **b** drought **c** flood **d** rain

SB

7. During a, the weather is very hot.

- a** flood **b** heat wave **c** cold **d** spring

SB

8. A can prevent farmers from growing food.

- a** thunderstorm **b** rain **c** soil **d** drought

9. The water entered homes and damaged them. It was a

- a** wind **b** fire **c** flood **d** drought

10. There is no rain for months. The land is dry. This is a

- a** snow **b** flood **c** drought **d** rain

11. A big fire is spreading in the forest. It's a/an

- a** wildfire **b** flood **c** earthquake **d** smoke

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

animals - burned - rain - dry

There was a long drought. The land became very ¹, and there was no ² A fire started, and many trees were ³ down. A lot of animals lost their homes.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

This summer, a wildfire spread near the mountains. It started because the weather was dry, and the wind was strong. The fire burned trees, and animals ran away. Firefighters came to stop the fire, and people helped by bringing water and food for the animals.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The weather was

- a** rainy **b** dry **c** cold **d** snowy

2. The fire burned many

- a** animals **b** homes **c** trees **d** roads

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why did the fire spread quickly?

4. Who helped to stop the fire?

5. How did people help the animals?

Unit 3 When Nature Changes

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

1. Flood - streets - with - covered - the - water

2. close - Is - the - it - mountains - to?

3. about - you - flood - hear - the - Did?

4. in U.S.A - is - A wildfire - spreading.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. what a big fire

2. we must help the animals

7 Write a paragraph of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

When nature strikes

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

flood - wildfire - drought

★ Extreme Weather In Ancient Egypt

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



Ancient Egypt	مصر القديمة	survive	يبقى علي قيد الحياة
rich soil	تربة خصبة	solve	يحل
basins	أحواض	weather	طقس
not enough rain	مطر غير كافٍ	damaged farm	مزرعة مدمرة
thick	سميك	drought	جفاف
mud bricks	الطوب اللبن	low	منخفض
flood	فيضان/ يفيض	hot winds	رياح ساخنة
sandstorm	عاصفة رملية	smart	ذكي/ انيق
land became dry	اصبحت الارض جافة	strong	قوي

Other words

كلمات أخرى

farming	الزراعة	desert	صحراء
problems	مشاكل	fields	مجالات/ حقول
canals	قنوات مائية	inside	داخل
dry	جاف	simple tools	ادوات بسيطة
machines	الآلات	irrigation systems	انظمة الري
heat	سخونة/ حرارة	crops	محاصيل
possible	ممکن	modern	حديث

Expressions, prepositions and phrases

تعبيرات وحروف جر وعبارات

To stop this	ليتوقف هذا	work hard	يعمل بجهد
spread it over their fields.	وزعونه في حقولهم	have modern machines	لديه الآلات حديثة
made farming possible	جعلت الزراعة ممكنة	stay safe	يبقى في امان
protect from	يحمي من		

Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ	Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
stop يتوقف	stopped	make يصنع	made
control يتحكم	controlled	give يعطي	gave
happen يحدث	happened	bring يحضر	brought
solve يحل	solved	build يبني	built
protect يحمي	protected	spread ينشر / يوزع	spread
breathe يتنفس	breathed	become يصبح	became
survive ينجو	survived		
use يستخدم	used		

Study the following

- 1 Ancient Egypt had weather that made farming possible, even in the desert.
تمتعت مصر القديمة بطقس مكنها من الزراعة، حتى في الصحراء.
- 2 The Nile River gave water and rich soil, which helped crops grow.
وفر نهر النيل الماء والتربة الخصبة، مما ساعد على نمو المحاصيل.
- 3 But sometimes, the floods were too strong and damaged farms.
ولكن في بعض الأحيان، كانت الفيضانات قوية جداً والحقت أضراراً بالمزارع.
- 4 To stop this, the Ancient Egyptians built canals and basins to control the water.
ولوقف ذلك، بنى المصريون القديما قنوات وأحواضاً للتحكم في المياه.
- 5 Droughts happened when there was not enough rain.
حدث الجفاف عند قلة الأمطار.
- 6 The Nile's water became low, and the land became dry.
انخفض منسوب مياه النيل، وجفت الأرض.
- 7 Ancient Egyptians made irrigation systems to bring water to their fields.
بنى المصريون القديما أنظمة ري لجلب المياه إلى حقولهم.
- 8 It was hard to see and breathe.
كان من الصعب الرؤية والتنفس.

9 People stayed inside to stay safe.

ويبقى الناس في منازلهم حفاظًا على سلامتهم.

10 They built their homes with thick mud bricks to protect themselves from the wind and sand.

وبنوا منازلهم من الطوب اللبن السميك لحماية أنفسهم من الرياح والرمل.

11 The Ancient Egyptians didn't have modern machines, but they found smart ways to survive.

لم يكن لدى المصريين القدماء آلات حديثة، لكنهم وجدوا طرقًا ذكية للبقاء على قيد الحياة.

12 They worked hard, used simple tools, and protected themselves from heat, sand, and floods.

عملوا بجد، واستخدموا أدوات بسيطة، وحموا أنفسهم من الحرارة والرمل والفيضانات.

Listen and read:

استمع و اقرا:

The Weather⁽¹⁾ in Ancient Egypt

استمع إلى النص:



Ancient Egypt had weather that made farming possible, even in the desert. The Nile River gave water and **rich soil**⁽²⁾, which helped crops grow. But sometimes, the weather also brought problems like floods, droughts, and sandstorms.



تمتعت مصر القديمة بطقس مكنها من الزراعة، حتى في الصحراء. كان نهر النيل يوفر الماء والتربة الخصبة، مما ساعد على نمو المحاصيل. ولكن في بعض الأحيان، كان الطقس يجلب أيضًا مشاكل مثل الفيضانات والجفاف والعواصف الرملية.

Floods : The Nile River flooded every year. The water brought rich soil to the land, which helped crops grow. But sometimes, the floods were too strong and **damaged farms**⁽³⁾. To stop this, the Ancient Egyptians built canals and **basins**⁽⁴⁾ to control the water and spread it over their **fields**⁽⁵⁾.

الفيضانات: كان نهر النيل يفيض كل عام. وجلبت المياه تربة خصبة إلى الأرض، مما ساعد على نمو المحاصيل. ولكن في بعض الأحيان، كانت الفيضانات قوية جدًا وألحقت أضرارًا بالمزارع. لتوقف ذلك، بنى المصريون القدماء قنوات وأحواضًا للتحكم في المياه وتوزيعها على حقولهم.

Arabic Meaning

١. الطقس
٢. تربة غنية
٣. مزارع مدمرة
٤. أحواض
٥. حقول

Unit 3 When Nature Changes

Droughts : Droughts happened when there was not enough rain. The Nile's water became low, and the land became dry. **Crops**⁽⁶⁾ could not grow. To solve this, the Ancient Egyptians made **irrigation**⁽⁷⁾ systems to bring water to their fields.

الجفاف: كان يحدث عندما لا تكون الأمطار كافية، فينخفض منسوب مياه النيل، وتجف الأرض.
فتتوقف المحاصيل عن النمو.

ولحل هذه المشكلة، صنع المصريون القدماء أنظمة ري لجلب المياه إلى حقولهم.

٦. محاصيل
٧. الري
٨. الطوب اللبن
٩. الآلات
١٠. يبقى على قيد الحياة

Sandstorms : Sandstorms, called Khamsin, brought strong, hot winds with sand. It was hard to see and breathe. People stayed inside to stay safe. They built their homes with thick **mud bricks**⁽⁸⁾ to protect themselves from the wind and sand.

The Ancient Egyptians didn't have modern **machines**⁽⁹⁾, but they found smart ways to **survive**⁽¹⁰⁾. They worked hard, used simple tools, and protected themselves from heat, sand, and floods.

العواصف الرملية: جلبت العواصف الرملية، المسماة رياح الخماسين، رياحا قوية وحارة محملة بالرمال. كان من الصعب الرؤية والتنفس. بقي الناس في منازلهم حفاظا على سلامتهم. بنوا منازلهم من قلوب لبن سميك لحماية أنفسهم من الرياح والرمال. لم يكن لدى المصريون القدماء آلات حديثة، لكنهم وجدوا طرقا ذكية للبقاء. عملوا بجد، واستخدموا أدوات بسيطة، وحملوا أنفسهم من الحرارة والرمال والفيضانات.

Language in use

قواعد لغوية

Past Simple زمن الماضي البسيط

- نستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط عندما نتحدث عن شيء حدث وانتهى في الماضي.

- I **watched** a movie yesterday. أنا شاهدت فيلماً أمس.
- She **visited** her grandma last week. هي زارت جدتها الأسبوع الماضي.

Form

التكوين

باقى الجملة + فعل في التصريف الثاني + (الفاعل) Subject

- تنقسم الأفعال في الماضي إلى أفعال منتظمة وأفعال غير منتظمة.

1. Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

⊙ نضيف للفعل **ed** آخر الفعل في الماضي.

play → played

open → opened

⊙ نضيف **d** إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (e)

live → lived

love → loved

⊙ إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف **y** + حرف ساكن نحذف **y** ونضيف (ied)

study → studied

2. Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

- لا نضيف **ed** ، بل نحفظ شكل الفعل الماضي.- He **ate** pizza.

هو أكل بيتزا.

- We **went** to the park.

نحن ذهبنا إلى الحديقة.

Negative

النفى

Subject + didn't + inf. الفعل في المصدر

- I **didn't** play football.

أنا لم ألعب كرة القدم.

Question

السؤال

Did + subject + inf. الفعل في المصدر ؟

⊙ نستخدم :

- **Did** you watch TV?

هل شاهدت التلفاز؟

- Yes, I did. اجابة في الاثبات.

- No, I didn't. اجابة في النفي.

- What **did** he eat ?

ماذا اكل ؟

Key words

كلمات دالة

yesterday	أمس	last week	الأسبوع الماضي	last year	السنة الماضية
two days ago	منذ يومين	when I was a child	عندما كنت طفلاً	in 2000	في سنة 2000

Verb to be in the past فعل يكون في الماضي

I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد → was

We / You / They / اسم جمع → were

- I **was** late for school yesterday.- They **were** happy at the party.⊙ لنفي فعل يكون **verb to be** ضع **not** بعد **was/were**.- He **wasn't** at school yesterday.- We **weren't** close friends.

Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة :

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. The Nile gave water and

- ☐ a gold ☐ b bricks ☐ c soil ☐ d tools

2. Crops could not grow during a

- ☐ a flood ☐ b drought ☐ c sandstorm ☐ d fire

3. People used to move water.

- ☐ a machines ☐ b tools ☐ c irrigation ☐ d wheels

4. Sandstorms made it hard to

- ☐ a eat ☐ b sleep ☐ c see ☐ d walk

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة :

1. The floods brought water and to the land. SB

- ☐ a sand ☐ b rich soil ☐ c rocks ☐ d heat

2. Droughts made the Nile's water

- ☐ a soil ☐ b spread ☐ c high ☐ d low SB

3. The protected the Ancient Egyptians from sandstorms. SB

- ☐ a mud bricks ☐ b wood ☐ c pyramids ☐ d metal

4. The Ancient Egyptians found smart ways to

- ☐ a damage ☐ b breathe ☐ c grow ☐ d survive SB

5. The wind blew hot sand everywhere. It was a

- ☐ a flood ☐ b sandstorm ☐ c drought ☐ d fire

6. Ancient Egyptians built to bring water to their fields.

- ☐ a bricks ☐ b machines
☐ c irrigation systems ☐ d boats

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

dry - crops - canals - floods

Ancient Egyptians built ① to control water. When the land became ②, they could not grow ③ They solved problems without modern machines. They worked hard and used simple tools.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

The weather in Ancient Egypt helped farming, but also brought problems. Floods gave rich soil but sometimes damaged farms. Droughts made the land dry and stopped crops from growing. People used irrigation systems and canals to solve these problems. During sandstorms, they stayed inside and built strong homes from mud bricks to stay safe.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Floods gave to the land.

a water

b mud

c rich soil

d bricks

2. Sandstorms brought

a cold rain

b strong winds and sand

c fresh air

d water

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What did droughts do to the land?

4. What did people do during sandstorms?

5. How did the Egyptians protect themselves without modern machines?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. They (**visit**) the zoo last weekend.

SB

2. I (**am**) so excited about my trip two days ago.

SB

Unit 3 When Nature Changes

3. (Do) the teacher give us homework last Monday?
4. Why didn't you (went) to school yesterday?
5. (Do) you visit the library yesterday?
6. I (am) worried about my brother two hours ago.
7. Where did Laila (went) on her holiday?
8. They (take) a lot of photos on their trip last week.
9. Were you at home yesterday? - No, I (weren't).
10. Three months ago, we (move) to a new house.
11. (Is) your teacher explain the new lesson yesterday?
12. My sister (studying) for the exams last week.

SB

SB

6 Write a text of **THIRTY (30) words** using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

The Weather in Ancient Egypt

canals - irrigation - bricks - survive

★ Story Time

The Two Frogs

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



Once upon a time,	يحكى أن / ذات مرة	fly (flies)	ذباب (ذباب)
best friend	صديق مفضل	frog	ضفدع
pond	بركة	extremely	ل للغاية
safely	بأمان	a deep well	بئر عميق
leap	يقفز لأعلى / يشب		

Other words

كلمات أخرى

quiet village	قرية هادئة	together	معا
edge	حافة / طرف	hole	حفرة
swimming	السباحة	resting	راحة
The warm sun	الشمس الدافئة	summer	الصيف
strong	قوي	instead	بدلاً من ذلك
safe	آمن	wing	جناح
daily life	الحياة اليومية		

Expressions, prepositions and phrases

تعبيرات وحروف جر وعبارات

get worried	يصبح قلق	think about	يفكر في
search/ look for	يبحث عن	get stuck	يعلق / ينحشر
think for a moment	يفكر للحظة	won't be able to	لن يكون قادراً على
have fun	يستمتع بوقت	any longer	بعد الآن
After a long time	بعد مدة طويلة	at the bottom of	في قاع
look like	يبدو / يشبه		

Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ	Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
leap يقفز لأعلى	leaped	get out يخرج	got out
live يعيش	lived	become يصبح	became
dry up يجف	dried up	leave يغادر	left
decide to يقرر أن	decided to	swim يسبح	swam
agree يوافق	agreed	dig يحفر	dug
affect يؤثر على	affected	catch بصطاد	caught

Definitions

تعريفات

a pond بركة	is an area of water, usually smaller than a lake مساحة من المياه عادة أصغر من البحيرة.
a well بئر	is a deep hole dug in the ground to find water. حفرة عميقة تحفر في الأرض للبحث عن الماء.
flies ذباب	are small insects with two thin, small wings. حشرات صغيرة ذات جناحين رقيقين وصغيرين.
leap يقفز	to jump high and far in one big movement. يقفز عاليًا وبعيدًا في حركة كبيرة واحدة.
safely بامان	protected from danger. محمي من الخطر.

Study the following

- 1 There were two frogs who were best friends. - كان هناك ضفدعان صديقان مقربان.
- 2 They lived in a small pond. - كانا يعيشان في بركة صغيرة.
- 3 They loved the pond very much. - كانا يحببان البركة كثيرًا.
- 4 They swam in the cool water. - كانا يسبحان في الماء البارد.
- 5 One summer, the weather became extremely hot. - في أحد فصول الصيف، أصبح الطقس حارًا جدًا.
- 6 The pond started to dry up. - بدأت البركة أن تجف.
- 7 The frogs got worried. - شعر الضفدعان بالقلق.
- 8 They looked for a new home. - بحثا عن منزل جديد.

9 They saw a deep well.

- رأى كلاهما بئراً عميقاً.

10 They decided not to live in the well.

- قررا ألا يعيشا في البئر.

11 This well looks like a great place for us to live! هذا البئر يبدو مكان رائع للعيش فيه.

Listen and read:

استمع واقرأ:

استمع إلى النص:



Once upon a time⁽¹⁾, in a small and quiet village, there were two frogs who were best friends.

في يوم من الأيام، في قرية صغيرة وهادئة، كان هناك ضفدعان كانا أعز الأصدقاء.

They lived together in a small pond near the edge of the village.

كانا يعيشان معاً في بركة صغيرة بالقرب من أطراف القرية.

The pond⁽²⁾ was their home, and they loved it very much.

كانت البركة هي بيتهم، وكانا كلاهما يحبها كثيراً.

Every day, they had fun catching flies, swimming in the cool water, and resting under the warm sun.

كل يوم، كانا يستمتعان بصيد الذباب، والسباحة في الماء البارد، والاسترخاء تحت أشعة الشمس الدافئة.

One summer, the weather became extremely⁽³⁾ hot.

في أحد فصول الصيف، أصبح الطقس شديد الحرارة.

The sun was strong, and the pond started to dry up.

كانت الشمس قوية، وبدأت البركة تجف.

The frogs⁽⁴⁾ got worried.

شعر الضفدعان بالقلق.

They knew they couldn't stay in the pond any longer because there wasn't enough water for them.



Arabic Meaning

١. يحكى ان

٢. بركة

٣. للغاية

٤. ضفدع

٥. بأمان

٦. بدلا من ذلك

علما أنه لا يمكنهما البقاء في البركة أكثر من ذلك، لأنه لم يعد هناك ماء كافٍ لهما.

They decided to leave the pond and look for a new home where they could live safely⁽⁵⁾.

فقررا مغادرة البركة والبحث عن بيت جديد يمكنهما العيش فيه بأمان.

The two frogs leaped through fields and grass, looking for another pond.

قفز الضفدعان عبر الحقول والعشب، بحثاً عن بركة أخرى.

After a long time, they saw a deep well.

وبعد وقت طويل، شاهدوا بئراً عميقاً.

One of the frogs said, "This well looks like a great place for us to live! The water is cool, and it's very deep.

قال أحد الضفدعين: «يبدو أن هذا البئر مكان رائع للعيش فيه! الماء بارد، والبئر عميق جداً. «We can swim here all day.»

يمكننا السباحة هنا طوال اليوم.»

The other frog thought for a moment and said, "The water is nice now, but what if it dries up one day? If that happens, we will get stuck at the bottom of the well, and we won't be able to get out."

فكر الضفدع الآخر للحظة، ثم قال: "الماء جميل الآن، لكن ماذا لو جف يوماً ما؟ إذا حدث ذلك، فسوف نعلق في قاع البئر، ولن نتتمكن من الخروج."

The first frog thought about what his friend said, then agreed.

فكر الضفدع الأول فيما قاله صديقه، ثم وافق.

They decided not to live in the well. Instead⁽⁶⁾, they kept leaping and searching for a safe home.

وقررا عدم العيش في البئر، وواصلوا القفز والبحث عن بيت آمن.



Pronunciation

A vowel digraph

A vowel digraph is when two vowels appear together and make just one sound
 مجموعة الاصوات المتحركة هي عندما يأتى صوتان متحركان معاً وينتج عنهما صوت واحد.

Ex: Leap: In "leap," the letters 'ea' make the long 'e' sound.

- في كلمة leap، يصدر الحرفان ea معاً صوت ممتد، كما في كلمة see.

Ex: Flood: In "flood," the letters 'oo' make a short 'u' sound.

- في كلمة flood، يصدر الحرفان (oo) صوت (u) قصيراً كما في كلمة cup.

Ex: Boat: In "boat," the letters 'oa' make a long 'o' sound.

- في كلمة boat، يصدر الحرفان (oa) صوت "o" ممتد" كما في كلمة go.

⊙ (ea) / (ee) → long (e) sound

leap	يقفز	read	يقرأ	peas	بسلة	hear	يَسْمَع	feet	قدمان
eat	يأكل	teacher	مدرس	meet	يقابل	green	أخضر	week	اسبوع
weak	ضعيف	stream	جدول مائي						

⊙ oa → long (o) sound

boat	قارب	goat	معزة	road	طريق
------	------	------	------	------	------

⊙ oo → short (u) sound

flood	فيضان
-------	-------

1 Listen and circle the words with vowel digraphs.

استمع وضع دائرة حول مجموعة الاصوات المتحركة :

read	cup	thumb	book	hot	goat
feet	well	hear	foot		frog

2 Circle the vowel digraph in the following sentences.

ضع دائرة حول مجموعة الاصوات المتحركة فى الجمل الاتية :

1. I like to eat green peas.
2. We read two books last week.
3. The gazelle leaped over the small stream.
4. The heavy flood covered the roads.

3 Fill in the blanks.

املا الفراغات :

meet - boat - weak - floods

1. The sailed across the lake.
2. It's nice to my teacher at the break.
3. The made the plants

Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Two lived in a pond.

☐ a ducks

☐ b frogs

☐ c cats

☐ d cows

2. The dried up in summer.

☐ a river

☐ b house

☐ c pond

☐ d road

3. They found a well.

☐ a big

☐ b dry

☐ c deep

☐ d small

4. They didn't in the well.

☐ a eat

☐ b jump

☐ c sleep

☐ d drink

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I can't open the door because I am behind it.

☐ a found

☐ b stuck

☐ c climbed

☐ d safe

2. We get water from a near our house.

☐ a cave

☐ b road

☐ c well

☐ d shop

3. The weather was hot, and the river began to

☐ a freeze

☐ b dry

☐ c fly

☐ d fill

4. A is an area of water and smaller than a lake.

☐ a river

☐ b pond

☐ c forest

☐ d village

5. In the past, people got fresh water from the deep

☐ a rock

☐ b road

☐ c metal

☐ d well

6. The frogs lived in a new home where they could live

☐ a quickly

☐ b loudly

☐ c badly

☐ d safely

7. The pond started to out because of the hot sun.

☐ a get

☐ b wake

☐ c dry

☐ d fly

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

pond - stuck - friends - hot

Two frogs were best ① They lived in a cool ② One day the weather was very ③ , and they got ④ in the mud. Then, they searched for a new home.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

Unit 3 When Nature Changes

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Yesterday, I read the story of the two frogs. They lived together in a small pond near the village. Suddenly the sun was strong and the pond started to dry up. The frogs were worried and started to leave the pond. Then, they leaped through fields to find a new home. They found a deep well, but the other frog thought that one day, the well might dry up and they would get stuck at the bottom. I learnt from this story that I should think before I make a decision.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The well was very
☐ a long ☐ b wide ☐ c dry ☐ d deep
- The frogs decided to the pond.
☐ a damage ☐ b affect ☐ c leave ☐ d find

B. Answer the following questions:

- What did the other frog think?
- What did the frogs do at the end?
- Where did the frogs live?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

1. did - get - Why - worried - the frogs?
2. kept - for - a safe - They - home - searching.
3. small - are - Flies - insects - wings - with.
4. decided - not to - the well - They - live - in.

6 Write a paragraph of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

A story about two frogs

frogs - pond - well

Lessons 4&5

★ Writing Once Upon My Imagination

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



sunshine	اشعة الشمس	collage	ملصقة
strange	غريب	cozy	دافئ / مريح
upside down	رأساً على عقب	fluffy clouds	سحب منفوشة
turn right side up	انقلبوا للوضع الصحيح	whisper	همسة / يهمس
flip	ينقلب / ينقلب	kindness	طيبة / عطف

Other words

كلمات أخرى

little	صغير	grandma	جدة
flower	وردة	slowly	ببطيء
gentle	لطيف	clouds	سُحب
magically	بطريقة ساحرة	bright	لامع / ساطع
joy	فرح / سعادة	brightly	بشكل ساطع
sunny morning	صباح مشمس	problem	مشكلة
weather conditions	حالات الطقس		

Expressions, prepositions and phrases

تعابير وأحرف جر وعبارات

clapped her hands with joy.	صفقت يديها من الفرح	looked out of her window	تنظر من خلال شباكها
turn over	ينقلب	one by one	واحدة تلو الأخرى
a girl named	فتاة تسمى	a little bit of	قليل من

Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماض	Present مضارع	Past ماض
float يطفو	floated	think يعتقد	thought
fix يصلح	fixed	begin يبدأ	began
clap يصفق	clapped	shine تسطع	shone
smile يتسم	smiled		
solve يحل	solved		
remember يتذكر	remembered		
glue يلصق	glued		
flip يقلب	flipped		

Study the following

- 1 One sunny morning Lily looked out of her window and saw something strange.

في صباح مشمس، نظرت ليلي من النافذة ورأت شيئاً غريباً.

- 2 Big, fluffy clouds were floating upside down!

كانت غيوم كبيرة ومنفوشة تطفو في السماء مقلوبة رأساً على عقب!

- 3 So, Lily opened her window and whispered to the clouds.

لذلك، فتحت ليلي نافذتها وهمست للسحب.

- 4 Slowly and magically, the clouds began to flip.

ببطء وبسحر، بدأت السحب تنقلب.

- 5 The sun shone brightly and the flowers smiled.

أشرقت الشمس بشكل ساطع وابتسمت الزهور.

Listen and read:

استمع واقرأ:

Lily's flowers get sunshine! زهور ليلي تحصل على ضوء الشمس!

Once upon a time, in a **cozy**⁽¹⁾ little house, lived a girl named Lily.

في يوم من الأيام، كانت هناك فتاة تدعى ليلي تعيش في منزل صغير ومريح.

One sunny morning, Lily looked out of her window and saw something **strange**⁽²⁾.

في صباح مشمس، نظرت ليلي من نافذتها ورأت شيئاً غريباً.

Big, fluffy clouds were floating upside down!

كانت غيوم كبيرة ومنفوشة وتطفو في السماء ولكنها كانت مقلوبة!

"Oh no!" she cried. "How will my flowers get **sunshine**⁽³⁾ if the clouds are upside down?" Lily thought hard.

"يا إلهي!" صرخت. "كيف ستحصل زهوري على ضوء الشمس إذا كانت الغيوم مقلوبة؟" فكرت ليلي كثيراً.

She remembered her grandma saying that sometimes, a gentle **whisper**⁽⁴⁾ could fix things.

تذكرت أن جدتها كانت تقول إن همسة اللطيفة أحياناً يمكن أن تصلح الأمور.

So, Lily opened her window and whispered, "Please, dear clouds, turn right side up!"

لذلك، فتحت ليلي نافذتها وهمست: «من فضلكم، أيتها الغيوم العزيزة، عودوا إلى وضعكم الصحيح!»

Arabic Meaning

١. هادئ/مريح

٢. غريب

٣. اشعة الشمس

٤. همسة

٥. صفقت

٦. اللطف

Slowly and magically, the clouds began to flip.

بطيء وبطريقة سحرية، بدأت الغيوم تنقلب.

One by one, they turned over, showing their bright, sunny sides

واحدة تلو الأخرى، بدأت تظهر جانبها المشرق المشمس.

Lily **clapped**⁽⁴⁾ her hands with joy.

صفقت ليلي يديها فرحاً.

The sun shone brightly, and the flowers smiled. Lily knew that even big problems could be solved with a little bit of **kindness**⁽⁶⁾ and a gentle whisper.

أشرقت الشمس بسطوع، وابتسمت الزهور. علمت ليلي أن حتى المشاكل الكبيرة يمكن حلها بقليل من اللطف وهمسة رقيقة.

Fiction

How to write a fiction story

كيف تكتب قصة خيالية

A **Fiction story** is a made-up story created from the imagination, not based on real things that happened.

🔴 القصة الخيالية : هي قصة من وحي الخيال، لم تحدث في الحقيقة، وهي ليست قصة واقعية.

Plot

Plot of Fiction Story

عناصر حبكة القصة الخيالية

1. **Beginning** (البداية) → Meet the characters and setting

التعرف على شخصيات القصة ومكان وزمان القصة.

2. **Problem** (المشكلة) → something goes wrong أي حدوث خطأ ما

3. **Middle** (المنتصف) → The character tries to fix it تحاول الشخصية إصلاح المشكلة

4. **Climax** (الذروة) → The most exciting part الجزء الأكثر تشويقاً في القصة

5. **Ending** (نهاية القصة) → The problem is solved يتم فيها حل المشكلة

Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. Lily saw clouds in the sky.
☐ a big ☐ b upside-down ☐ c black ☐ d tiny
2. She was worried about her
☐ a dog ☐ b toys ☐ c flowers ☐ d books
3. Lily used a to fix the problem.
☐ a ladder ☐ b shout ☐ c whisper ☐ d net
4. The sun after the clouds flipped.
☐ a cried ☐ b danced ☐ c shone ☐ d disappeared

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I can't open the door because I am behind it.
☐ a found ☐ b stuck ☐ c climbed ☐ d safe
2. We get water from a near our house.
☐ a cave ☐ b road ☐ c well ☐ d shop
3. The weather was hot, and the river began to
☐ a freeze ☐ b dry ☐ c fly ☐ d fill
4. I like living in a little house. It's nice.
☐ a dirty ☐ b cozy ☐ c busy ☐ d unpleasant
5. The boy showed when he carried the heavy bag for his grandma.
☐ a illness ☐ b sunshine ☐ c fear ☐ d kindness
6. Mona her hands with joy.
☐ a clapped ☐ b flipped ☐ c fixed ☐ d floated
7. Yesterday, the sky was full of fluffy
☐ a wings ☐ b clouds ☐ c leaves ☐ d flowers

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

fluffy - fixed - whispered - cozy

One day, there was a little girl named Lily. She lived in a ① house.
 One sunny morning, she looked out of her window and saw ② clouds

Unit 3 When Nature Changes

were floating upside down. Lily ③ kindly to the clouds. Then, the clouds turned over, the sun shone and the flowers smiled.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة :

One afternoon, a boy named Omar was flying his red kite in the field. The wind was strong, and the kite flew high in the sky. Omar laughed with joy. Suddenly, the wind stopped. The kite began to fall slowly. Omar said kindly, "Dear wind, can you blow again?" A cool breeze came, and the kite went up again. Omar smiled and clapped with joy.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Omar was flying a kite.

a blue

b yellow

c red

d green

2. The wind made the kite

a fall

b fly

c stop

d break

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What did Omar say to the wind?

4. How did the wind help Omar?

5. What did Omar do when the kite flew again?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً :

1. could - fix - things - A gentle - whisper.

2. whispered - Lily - clouds - the - to

3. the sun - Did - shine - brightly?

4. hands - joy - Hoda - her - clapped - with.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس :

1. He (see) the clouds last night.

2. We (go) to the park yesterday.

3. They (move) to the village last weekend.

4. Did she (whispered) to the clouds?

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي :

1. how will my flowers get sunshine

2. please dear clouds turn right side up

Review



on Unit 3

Key vocabulary



thunderstorm

عاصفة رعدية



sandstorm

عاصفة رملية



flood

فيضان



drought

جفاف



wildfire

حريق الغابات



heat wave

موجة حارة

news	أخبار	damaged farm	مزرعة مدمرة
damage	يتلف / يدمر	low	منخفض
spread	يتنشر	hot winds	رياح ساخنة
stuck	عالق	smart	ذكي / انيق
planet	كوكب	strong	قوي
Ancient Egypt	مصر القديمة	Once upon a time,	يحكى أن / ذات مرة
rich soil	تربة خصبة	best friend	صديق مفضل
basins	أحواض	pond	بركة
not enough rain	مطر غير كافي	safely	بأمان
mud bricks	الطوب اللبن	leap	يقفز لأعلى / يثب
land became dry	اصبحت الارض جافة	fly (flies)	ذباب (ذباب)
survive	يبقى علي قيد الحياة	frog	ضفدع
weather	طقس	extremely	ل للغاية

Unit 3 When Nature Changes

a deep well	بئر عميق	collage	ملصقة
sunshine	اشعة الشمس	cozy	دافئ/ مريح
strange	غريب	fluffy clouds	سحب منفوشة
upside down	رأساً على عقب	whisper	همسة/ يهمس
turn right side up	انقلبوا للوضع الصحيح	kindness	طيبة/ عطف
flip	يقلب/ ينقلب		

Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

cover	يغطي
damage	يدمر
flood	يفيض
stop	يتوقف
control	يتحكم
protect	يحمي
breathe	يتنفس
survive	ينجو
leap	يقفز لأعلى
dry up	يجف
agree	يوافق
affect	يؤثر على
float	يطفو
clap	يصفق

Past ماض

covered
damaged
flooded
stopped
controlled
protected
breathed
survived
leaped
dried up
agreed
affected
floated
clapped

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

strike	يضرب
get stuck	ينحشر / يتعلق
lose	يفقد/ يخسر
burn down	يحرق
bring	يحضر
build	يبني
spread	ينشر/ يوزع
get out	يخرج
leave	يغادر
swim	يسبح
dig	يحفر
catch	يصطاد
shine	تسطع

Past ماض

struck
got stuck
lost
burned / burnt down
brought
built
spread
got out
left
swam
dug
caught
shone

Language in use

قواعد لغوية

Past Simple الزمن الماضي البسيط

- نستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط عندما نتحدث عن شيء حدث وانتهى في الماضي.

- I **watched** a movie yesterday. أنا شاهدت فيلمًا أمس.
- She **visited** her grandma last week. هي زارت جدتها الأسبوع الماضي.

Form

التكوين

باقى الجملة + فعل في التصريف الثاني + (الفاعل) Subject

- تنقسم الأفعال في الماضي إلى أفعال منتظمة وأفعال غير منتظمة.

1. Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

نضيف للفعل **ed** آخر الفعل في الماضي.

play → played open → opened

نضيف **d** إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (e)

live → lived love → loved

إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف **y** + حرف ساكن نحذف **y** ونضيف (**ied**)

study → studied

2. Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

- لا نضيف **ed**، بل نحفظ شكل الفعل الماضي.

- He **ate** pizza. هو أكل بيتزا.
- We **went** to the park. نحن ذهبنا إلى الحديقة.

Negative

النفى

Subject + didn't + inf. الفعل في المصدر

- I **didn't** play football. أنا لم أعب كرة القدم.

Question

السؤال

Did + subject + inf. الفعل في المصدر ؟

- **Did** you watch TV? هل شاهدت التلفاز؟
- Yes, I did. اجابة فى الاثبات.
- No, I didn't. اجابة فى النفى.
- What **did** he eat ? ماذا اكل ؟

نستخدم :

Key words كلمات دالة

yesterday	أمس	last week	الأسبوع الماضي	last year	السنة الماضية
two days ago	منذ يومين	when I was a child	عندما كنت طفلًا	in 2000	في سنة 2000



Answers to Paragraphs

1

Lesson 1

When Nature Strikes

Sometimes nature can be dangerous. There are floods, droughts, and sandstorms. People must find smart ways to stay safe. In the past, Egyptians built canals and used mud bricks.

2

Lesson 2

The Weather in Ancient Egypt

Ancient Egyptians lived near the Nile. The river helped them grow crops. But sometimes there were floods or droughts. They used irrigation and basins to solve problems.

3

Lesson 3

A story about two frogs

Two frogs lived in a small pond. One day, the pond dried up. They searched for a new home. They found a well but decided not to stay. They kept looking for a safe place

4

Test

The story of Lily and the Clouds

Lily saw clouds floating upside down. She was worried for her flowers. She whispered kindly to the clouds. They turned over, and the sun came back. Kindness solved the problem.

Al-Azhar Test

امتحان خاص بالأزهر الشريف

A- Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

استمع وأختَر:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. The frogs lived near a

(house - well - pond)

2. The weather was very

(cold - hot - rainy)

3. The frogs wanted to find

(food - water - sun)

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog:

اقرأ وأكمل:

terrible - stuck - inside - flood

Hisham : Did you hear the news on TV?

Amir : No, I was outside. What happened?

Hisham : There was a in Japan.

Amir : Oh! I thought it was

Hisham : The water covered the streets and many cars got

Amir : People stayed their homes.

C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read the text and answer questions:

اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة :

Ancient Egyptians lived near the Nile River. It helped them grow crops. But sometimes, the river flooded and damaged farms. They built canals and basins to control water. They also faced droughts and sandstorms. During sandstorms, they stayed inside and built houses with thick bricks.

A: Choose the correct answer:

1. The Nile helped Egyptians to

☐ a build houses

☐ b grow crops

☐ c stay inside

☐ d make food

2. During sandstorms, people

☐ a stayed inside

☐ b went swimming

☐ c played outside

☐ d solved problems

Unit 3 When Nature Changes

3. Canals and basins were used to

- a** keep animals safe **b** stop droughts **c** control water **d** protect people

B: Answer the following questions:

4. What problems did floods cause?

5. How did Egyptians protect themselves from sandstorms?

D- Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة :

1. The sun is very today.

- a** cold **b** hot **c** small **d** rainy

2. The frogs didn't jump in the well because it was

- a** deep **b** new **c** wind **d** nice

3. We saw a on the news. Many trees burned down.

- a** mud **b** wildfire **c** drought **d** flood

4. there sandstorms in the past?

- a** Was **b** Is **c** Were **d** Did

5. What they do yesterday?

- a** did **b** does **c** do **d** doing

E- Writing

5 Rearrange the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة :

1. The - pond - frogs - lived - near - a

2. The clouds - upside - down - were.

3. strong - The - was - wind - very

4. help - can - Kindness - problems - solve

5. well - saw - deep - the - They

Test on Unit 3

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة :

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. The frogs lived near a small

- ☐ a house ☐ b pond ☐ c river ☐ d tree

2. The weather was very

- ☐ a cold ☐ b rainy ☐ c hot ☐ d stormy

3. They wanted to find a new

- ☐ a cloud ☐ b flower ☐ c home ☐ d friend

4. The frogs saw a deep

- ☐ a mountain ☐ b well ☐ c road ☐ d sun

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة :

1. When it doesn't rain for a long time, it's called a

- ☐ a flood ☐ b whisper ☐ c drought ☐ d wave

2. The flowers need to grow.

- ☐ a snow ☐ b sunshine ☐ c wind ☐ d frogs

3. It's hard to in a sandstorm.

- ☐ a breathe ☐ b eat ☐ c drink ☐ d dry

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار :

sandstorms - Nile - farming - floods

The ancient Egyptians lived near the ① River. It helped them in

② Sometimes, they had problems like ③

Unit 3 When Nature Changes

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

One day, Lily looked outside her window. She saw the clouds were upside down. Her flowers couldn't get sunlight. Lily whispered kindly to the clouds. Slowly, they turned over. The sun came back, and her flowers were happy again. Lily smiled. She learned that kindness can fix problems.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Lily saw the were upside down.
a trees **b** frogs **c** clouds **d** ponds
- She used a kind
a jump **b** whisper **c** shout **d** swim

B. Answer the following questions:

- Why were the flowers not happy?
- What did Lily do to help?
- What did she learn at the end?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

- The** - were - frogs - looking - home - for
- whisper - problem - a - fixed - kind - **Her**

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- He (**swim**) in the pond last week.
- The clouds (**was**) upside down yesterday.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- lily said please help my flowers
- the sun is bright today

8 Write a paragraph of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding words:

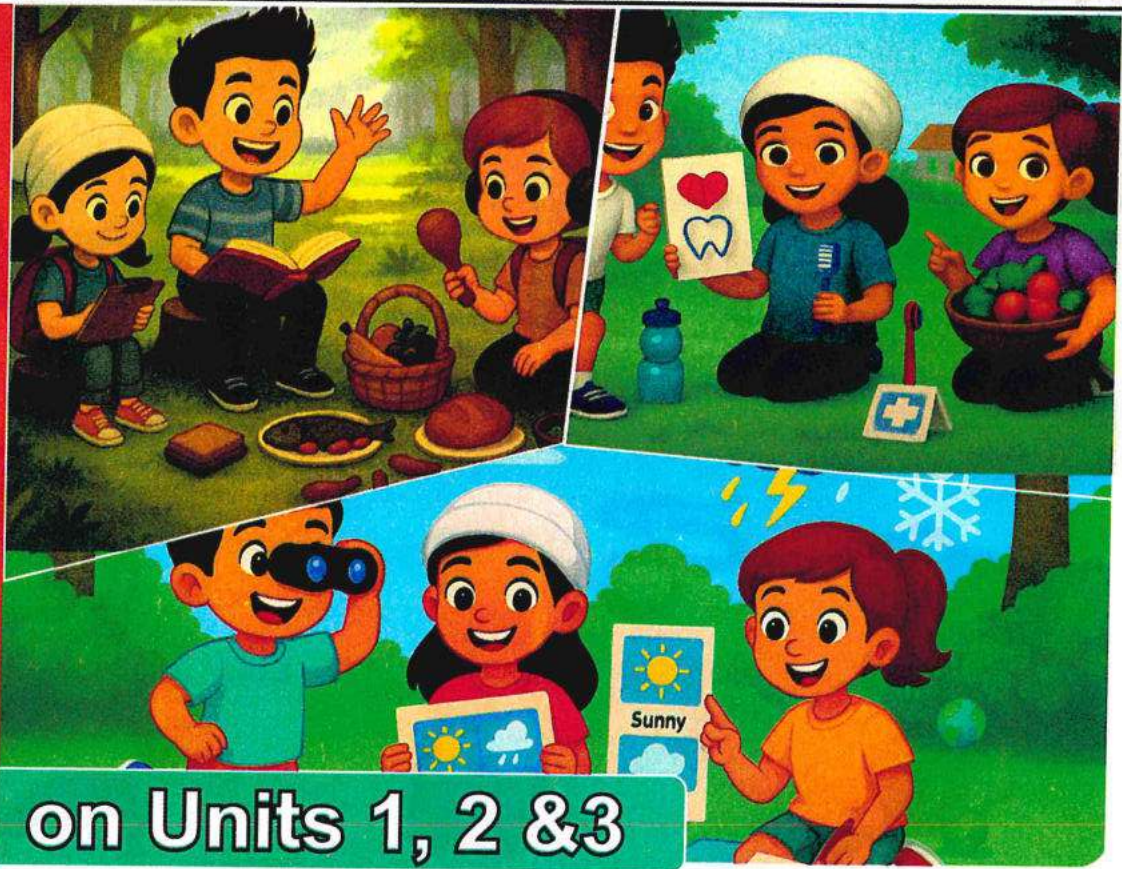
اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

The story of Lily and the clouds

clouds - whisper - kindness

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

Review 1



on Units 1, 2 & 3

Objectives of Review 1

- To revise the vocabulary and language from Units 3 - 1.

- يراجع التلاميذ المفردات والقواعد اللغوية الموجودة بالوحدات من ١ إلى ٣.

- To revise the key letter sounds from Units 3 - 1.

- يراجع التلاميذ الصوتيات من الوحدات ١ إلى ٣.

- To evaluate progress in Units 3 - 1.

- يتم تقييم مدى نجاح التلاميذ في استيعاب الوحدات من ١ إلى ٣.

★ Units 1 - 2 & 3

Unit 1



water weeds

حشائش مائية



The Nile River

نهر النيل



insects

حشرات



hunt

يصيد



crocodile

تمساح



snake

ثعبان



lizard

سحلية



camel

جمل



owl

بومة



rat

فأر كبير



fox

ثعلب



koshari

كشري



rice

أرز



pasta

مكرونة



lentils

عدس



sauce

صلصة



chickpeas

حمص



onions

بصل



ثوم



spices

توابل

creature	كائن حي	website	موقع علي الانترنت
desert	صحراء	kings of the Nile	ملوك نهر النيل
energy	طاقة	rocks	صخور
balance	توازن	nature	الطبيعة
crown	تاج	role	دور
shade	ظل	branch	غصن / فرح
trunk	جذع (الشجرة)	traditional	تقليدي
selfish	اناني	recipe	وجبة طعام
ingredients	مكونات الطعام	flyer	منشور اعلاني

Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

protect	يحمي
hunt	يصطاد
survive	يبقى حيًا
appreciate	يقدر
ignore	يهمل / يتجاهل
fry	يقلّي
pour	يسكب / يصب
mix	يخلط
cook	يطبخ
chop	يقطع قطع صغيرة / يفرم

Past ماض

protected
hunted
survived
appreciated
ignored
fried
poured
mixed
cooked
chopped

Present مضارع

find	يجد
give	يعطي
hide	يختبئ
become	يصبح
take	يأخذ
bend	ينحني
gave back	يرد الجميل
wear	يرتدي
put	يضع
cut	يقطع

Past ماض

found
gave
hid
became
took
bent
gave back
wore
put
cut

Language notes

ملاحظات لغوية

Adverbs of Frequency ظروف التكرار

Usage الاستخدام

We use adverbs of frequency to talk about how often something happens.

نستخدم ظروف التكرار لمعرفة نسبة حدوث الفعل

always → usually → often → sometimes → rarely → never
(100%) (80%) (70%) (50%) (20%) (0%)

100%	always	I always look after my little sister. اعتنى دائماً باختي الصغيرة (افعل ذلك دائماً).
90%	usually	I am usually tired in the evening. اشعر عادة بالتعب في المساء. (في اوقات كثيرة وليس طوال الوقت)
70%	often	I don't often watch television. غالباً اشاهد التلفاز. (في اغلب الوقت)
50%	sometimes	I sometimes get up early in the summer vacation. احياناً استيقظ مبكراً في عطلة الصيف (نصف ايام الاسبوع)
20%	rarely	I rarely travel abroad. نادراً ما اسافر للخارج. (نادراً ما حدث ذلك)
0%	never	I never visit the Pyramids. لم ازر الاهرام ابداً (لم افعل ذلك ولا مرة)

- تأتي ظروف التكرار بعد فعل يكون (verb to be) وقبل الافعال الاخرى

Verb to be → Adverbs of frequency

Adverbs of frequency → Other verbs

ظرف التكرار يأتي قبل الفعل الأساسي

✓ I **often** play football.

✗ I play often football.

و لكن بعد فعل "to be" (am, is, are)

✓ She **is always** happy.

✗ She always is happy.

Unit 2



swimming السباحة



tired متعب



heart قلب



muscles عضلات



lungs الرئتان



bones عظام



football كرة القدم



exercise يتدرب



fit لائق بدنيا

increase energy

يزيد الطاقة

mental health

الصحة العقلية / الصحة النفسية

vitamins

فيتامينات

soda

مياه غازية

wake up late

يستيقظ متأخراً

do exercise

يؤدي تمارين رياضية

wake up early

يستيقظ مبكراً

habits

عادات

organ

عضو

fist

قبضة اليد

waste

بقايا - نفايات

blood vessels

الأوعية الدموية

stress

الضغط / التوتر

reduce stress

sleep better

watch TV

play football

eat fruit and vegetables

eat dinner

oxygen

nutrients

carbon dioxide

cell

tube

hurt

يقلل الضغط / التوتر

ينام بشكل أفضل

يشاهد التلفزيون

يلعب كرة القدم

يأكل فاكهة وخضراوات

يأكل العشاء

أكسجين

عناصر غذائية

ثاني أكسيد الكربون

خلية

انبوب

يؤذي / يؤلم

Review 1

muscle	عضلة	heart	قلب
pump blood	يضخ الدم	exercise	التمرين
healthcare	الرعاية الصحية	pharmacist	صيدلي
hero	بطل	paramedic	مسعف (الإسعاف الطبي)
life savers	منقذون	patient	مريض
toothpaste	معجون اسنان	treatment	علاج
emergencies	الطوارئ	stethoscope	سماعة الطبيب
doctor	طبيب	diagnose	يشخص مرض

Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع	
increase	يزيد
exercise	يتمرّن
reduce	يقلّل
breathe	يتنفس
fry	يقلّي
share	يشارك
beat	ينبض
keep	يحافظ على
treat	يعالج
check	يفحص
identify	يحدد / يعرف
diagnose	يشخص
transport	ينقل

Past ماض

increased
exercised
reduced
breathed
fried
shared
beat
kept
treated
checked
identified
diagnosed
transported

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	
lose	يفقد
feel	يشعر
think	يعتقد
eat	يأكل
give	يعطي
buy	يشترى
wake up	يستيقظ
drink	يشرب
hurt	يؤذي - يجرح
spend	يقضي
wear	يرتدي
show	يبين
take away	يتخلص من - يزيل

Past ماض

lost
felt
thought
ate
gave
bought
woke up
drank
hurt
spent
wore
showed
took away

Language in use

Countable and uncountable nouns الاسماء المعدودة وغير المعدودة

Countable noun الاسم المعدود

uncountable noun الاسم غير المعدود

- هو اسم له مفرد وله جمع:

boy - boys book - books

- في حالة المفرد نضع قبله **a \ an**:

a boy - a book - an apple - an uncle

- يمكن أن يسبقه رقم في المفرد والجمع:

one boy - two boys - four boys

- هو اسم ليس مفرد وليس له جمع:

water - sand - oil - juice

- لا نضع قبله **a \ an**:

a water (x) a juice (x)

- لا يمكن أن يسبقه رقم في المفرد والجمع:

one water (x)

متى نضع **a \ an**- نضع **a** امام الاسم المفرد المعدود الذي يبدأ بصوت

ساكن مثل:

a banana - a cat - a door - a fan - a vet

- نضع **an** قبل الاسم المفرد المعدود الذي يبدأ بصوت

متحرك مثل:

an apple - an orange - an umbrella

لاحظ:

- إذا بدأت الكلمة بحرف ساكن صامت بعده صوت متحرك

نضع قبلها **an**:

an hour

في الكلمات التي تبدأ بحرف الـ **u**- إذا بدأت بـ **short u** نضع قبلها **a**:

an uncle - an umbrella

- إذا بدأت بـ **long u** تنطق مثل **U** كما في الابدئيةونضع قبلها **an**:

a uniform - a university

أمثلة الاسماء غير المعدودة

١- السوائل:

oil - water - juice

٢- المواد الدراسية:

English - Arabic - physics - science

٣- بعض الأطعمة:

meat لحم - rice أرز - wheat قمح

٤- الاسماء المجردة:

love الحب

٥- الفازات والمساحيق:

salt ملح - sugar سكر - sand رمل

- air هواء - oxygen أكسجين

٦- بعض الاسماء مثل:

news معلومات - information اخبار

furniture أثاث منزلي - money نقود

بعض **some**

- تأتي مع الاسم غير المعدود أو المعدود الجمع في الجملة المثبتة:

- There is **some** juice.- There are **some** apples.أي **any**

- تأتي مع الاسم غير المعدود أو المعدود الجمع في الجملة المنفية والسؤال:

- She does not have **any** bread.- There aren't **any** apples left.- Do you have **any** juice?

Unit 3



thunderstorm

عاصفة رعدية



sandstorm

عاصفة رملية



flood

فيضان



drought

جفاف



wildfire

حريق الغابات



heat wave

موجة حارة

news	أخبار	damaged farm	مزرعة مدمرة
damage	يتلف / يدمر	low	منخفض
spread	ينتشر	hot winds	رياح ساخنة
stuck	عالق	smart	ذكي / انيق
planet	كوكب	strong	قوي
Ancient Egypt	مصر القديمة	Once upon a time,	يحكى أن / ذات مرة
rich soil	تربة خصبة	best friend	صديق مفضل
basins	أحواض	pond	بركة
not enough rain	مطر غير كاف	safely	بأمان
mud bricks	الطوب اللبن	leap	يقفز لأعلى / يثب
land became dry	اصبحت الارض جافة	fly (flies)	ذباب (ذباب)
survive	يبقى علي قيد الحياة	frog	ضفدع
weather	طقس	extremely	للغاية

a deep well	بئر عميق	collage	ملصقة
sunshine	اشعة الشمس	cozy	دافئ/ مريح
strange	غريب	fluffy clouds	سحب منفوشة
upside down	رأساً على عقب	whisper	همسة/ يهمس
turn right side up	انقلبوا للوضع الصحيح	kindness	طيبة/ عطف
flip	يقلب/ ينقلب		

Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماض		Present مضارع		Past ماض	
cover	يغطي	covered		strike	يضرب	struck	
damage	يدمر	damaged		get stuck	ينحسر/ يتعلق	got stuck	
flood	يفيض	flooded		lose	يفقد/ يخسر	lost	
stop	يتوقف	stopped		burn down	يحرق	burned / burnt down	
control	يتحكم	controlled		bring	يحضر	brought	
protect	يحمي	protected		build	يبنى	built	
breathe	يتنفس	breathed		spread	ينشر/ يوزع	spread	
survive	ينجو	survived		get out	يخرج	got out	
leap	يقفز لأعلى	leaped		leave	يفادر	left	
dry up	يجف	dried up		swim	يسبح	swam	
agree	يوافق	agreed		dig	يحفر	dug	
affect	يؤثر على	affected		catch	يصطاد	caught	
float	يطفو	floated		shine	تسطع	shone	
clap	يصفق	clapped					

Language in use

Past Simple الزمن الماضي البسيط

- نستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط عندما نتحدث عن شيء حدث وانتهى في الماضي.

- I **watched** a movie yesterday. أنا شاهدت فيلمًا أمس.
- She **visited** her grandma last week. هي زارت جدتها الأسبوع الماضي.

Form

التكوين

باقى الجملة + فعل في التصريف الثاني + (الفاعل) Subject

- تنقسم الافعال في الماضي إلى افعال منتظمة وافعال غير منتظمة.

1. Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

نضيف للفعل **ed** اخر الفعل فى الماضي.

play → played

open → opened

نضيف **d** اذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (e)

live → lived

love → loved

اذا انتهى الفعل بحرف **y** + حرف ساكن نحذف **y** ونضيف (**ied**)

study → studied

2. Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

- لا نضيف **ed** بل نحفظ شكل الفعل الماضي.

- He **ate** pizza.

هو أكل بيتزا.

- We **went** to the park.

نحن ذهبنا إلى الحديقة.

Negative

النفى

Subject + didn't + inf. الفعل في المصدر

- I **didn't** play football.

أنا لم أعب كرة القدم.

Question

السؤال

نستخدم:

Did + subject + inf. الفعل في المصدر ؟

- **Did** you watch TV?

هل شاهدت التلفاز؟

- Yes, I did. اجابة فى الاثبات.

- No, I didn't. اجابة فى النفى.

- What **did** he eat ?

ماذا اكل ؟

Key words

كلمات دالة

yesterday	أمس	last week	الأسبوع الماضي	last year	السنة الماضية
two days ago	منذ يومين	when I was a child	عندما كنت طفلًا	in 2000	في سنة 2000

Test on Units

1,2&3

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة :

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



- Desert animals are able to in the hot desert.
☐ a die ☐ b survive ☐ c harm ☐ d said
- can live without water for a long time.
☐ a Crocodiles ☐ b Birds ☐ c Humans ☐ d Camels
- Owls fly at night when the weather is
☐ a cooler ☐ b hotter ☐ c rainy ☐ d windy
- Camel's eat to stay strong.
☐ a lizards ☐ b insects ☐ c sweets ☐ d plants

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة :

- is a gas that we breathe.
☐ a Oil ☐ b Oxygen ☐ c Blood ☐ d Water
- The water in the Nile became low because of
☐ a storms ☐ b moon ☐ c floods ☐ d droughts
- are dangerous and scary animals.
☐ a Giraffes ☐ b Crocodiles ☐ c Elephants ☐ d Lizards

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار :

left - safe - wave - stayed

Last summer, the weather in our city was too hot for many days. There was a heat ① We ② inside our houses all day to be safe. We drank lots of water to stay ③ and healthy. The land was dry and small ponds dried up.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة :

Egypt is famous for delicious food. One of the most important dishes is Koshari. I like eating Koshari at home or in the shops. I help my mother to cook Koshari. I buy the ingredients from the supermarket, too. When I finish cooking Koshari, I put Dakkah which is made with garlic and vinegar. Yesterday, my friend Heba visited me and ate Koshari. She liked it very much and asked me to write a recipe to cook

Review 1

it for lunch when she came back home. Koshari is very yummy and a traditional Egyptian food.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Dakkah is made with garlic and
 a juice b vinegar c salad d sugar
2. Heba asked me to write a to cook Koshari.
 a recipe b list c report d research

B. Answer the following questions:

3. When did Heba cook Koshari?

4. Where can you eat Koshari?

5. Summarize the text in one sentence?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

1. quickly - **Wildfires** - in - spread - the forest. -----
2. from - made - **What's** - Koshari - ? -----

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. She (**always**) eats fruits so she's unhealthy.
2. I didn't (**found**) my keys at home.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. do you like wearing colorful clothes -----
2. exercise makes me feel strong -----

8 Write a paragraph of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Floods in Ancient Egypt

rich soil to the land - damaged farms

Unit 4



My community

مجتمعي

Learning Outcomes

Speaking:

- Identify different places in the community. - يحدد الطالب الأماكن المختلفة في المجتمع.
- Ask and answer questions about favorite places. - يطرح الطالب أسئلة ويجيب عنها حول الأماكن المفضلة.
- Identify trigraph sounds in spoken words. - يتعرف الطالب على أصوات الحروف الثلاثية في الكلمات المنطوقة.

Reading:

- Demonstrate understanding of texts about village life and new city developments. - يظهر الطالب فهمه للنصوص التي تتحدث عن حياة القرية و التطورات الجديدة في المدينة.
- Demonstrate understanding of word problems. - يظهر الطالب فهمه للمشكلات اللفظية.

Listening:

- Identify specific places by listening to descriptive passages. - يتعرف الطالب على أماكن محددة من خلال الاستماع إلى فقرات وصفية.
- Identify vocabulary related to places in the community. - يتعرف الطالب على المفردات المتعلقة بالأماكن في المجتمع.

Writing:

- Write a first person narrative describing a place or experience using clear structure, personal voice, and descriptive language. - يكتب الطالب سرد بصيغة المتكلم يصف مكاناً أو تجربة باستخدام هيكل واضح، وبصوته وبلغة وصفية.
- Use prepositions of time in context. - يستخدم الطالب حروف الجر الخاصة بالوقت.

Lesson

1

★ Places in Our Community

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



restaurant

مطعم



coffee shop

مقهى



bakery

مخبز



supermarket

متجر



club

نادى رياضى



theme park

مدينة الملاهى / متنزه

community

مجتمع

neighborhood

حي سكني



Other words

كلمات أخرى

groceries

مستلزمات بقالة

loaf / loaves

رغيف / أرغفة

fun

ممتع

waiter

جرسون

different

مختلف

healthy

صحي

weekend

عطلة نهاية الأسبوع

meal

وجبة

personally

شخصيًا

smell

رائحة

fresh bread

خبز طازج

favorite

مفضل

relaxing

مريح

near

بالقرب من

Expressions, prepositions and phrases تعبيرات وحروف جر وعبارات

at the theme park	في الملاهي	That sounds nice!	يبدو رائعًا!
play sports	يمارس الرياضة	That's cool!	هذا رائع!
go on rides	يركب الألعاب في الملاهي	Great idea!	فكرة رائعة!
What about you?	ماذا عنك؟	connect with	يتواصل مع
pick out	يختار	pass by	يمر بجوار
hang out with friends	يخرج مع الأصدقاء / يقضي وقت مع الأصدقاء		

Conjugation of verbs تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

relax	يسترخي
try	يحاول / يجرب
train	يتدرب
shop	يتسوق
visit	يزور

Past ماض

relaxed
tried
trained
shopped
visited

Present مضارع

go	يذهب
buy	يشترى
drink	يشرب
bring	يحضر

Past ماض

went
bought
drank
brought

Language notes

ملاحظات لغوية

نستخدم **Where** للسؤال عن المكان

Where + do / does + subject + inf. فاعل + مصدر الفعل.

- A: **Where** do you play sports? B: I play sports at the club.
- A: **Where** does she drink coffee? B: She drinks coffee at the coffee shop.

تستخدم هذه التعبيرات **That sounds nice! / That's cool! / Great idea!** للتعبير عن الإعجاب أو الموافقة أو التشجيع عند التفاعل مع ما قاله أو اقترحه شخص آخر.

- A: I am going to the theme park this weekend.
B: **That sounds nice!**
- A: Let's go to the club tonight.
B: **Great idea!**

like to + inf / like + v + ing

- I **like** going to the club to play sports.
- My family **likes** to try different places every weekend.

1

Where?
أين؟

2

**That sounds nice!
That's cool!
Great idea!**

3

**like to + inf /
like + v + ing**

Study the following

1 My family likes to try different places every weekend.

- تحب عائلتي تجربة أماكن مختلفة كل عطلة نهاية أسبوع.

2 At the theme park, you can go on rides.

- في مدينة الملاهي، يمكنك ركوب الألعاب.

3 We have fun picking out groceries together at the supermarket.

- نستمتع باختيار البقالة معاً في السوبر ماركت.

4 If you want to buy groceries, go to the supermarket.

- إذا تريد شراء مستلزمات البقالة، اذهب إلى السوبر ماركت.

5 The club is a fun place to play sports.

- النادي مكان ممتع لممارسة الرياضة.

6 I train at the club every weekend.

- أتدرب في النادي كل عطلة نهاية أسبوع.

7 I go to the restaurant to eat dinner.

- أذهب إلى المطعم لتناول العشاء.

8 You can buy bread and cakes at the bakery.

- يمكنك شراء الخبز والكيك من المخبز.

9 I want to get some fresh bread from the bakery.

- أريد أن أشتري بعض الخبز الطازج من المخبز.

10 People relax and drink coffee at the coffee shop.

- يسترخي ويشرب الناس القهوة في المقهى.

1 Read and answer

اقرأ واجب:

Let's Go Out!

هيا بنا نخرج

استمع إلى النص:



Tamer and Adel talk about places in their neighborhood.

يتحدث تامر و عادل عن الأماكن في حيهم السكني.

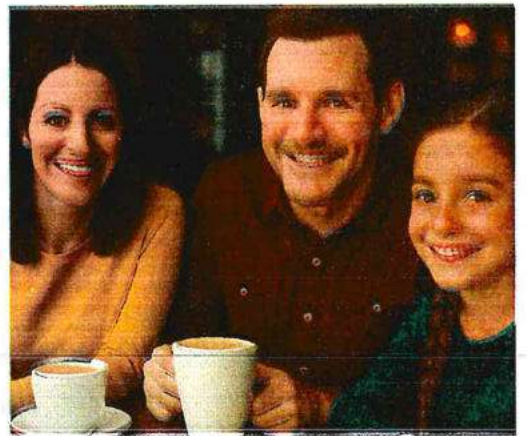
Tamer : Where do you like to go in your neighborhood⁽¹⁾?

تامر: أين تحب أن تذهب في حيئنا السكني؟

Adel : I like going to the club⁽²⁾ to play sports, video games, and hang out⁽³⁾ with my friends. What about you?

عادل: أحب الذهاب إلى النادي للعب الرياضة، وألعاب

الفيديو، وقضاء الوقت مع أصدقائي. ماذا عنك؟



Arabic Meaning

١. حي
٢. نادي رياضي
٣. يخرج مع/ يقضي وقت مع

Tamer : I usually go to the **supermarket**⁽⁴⁾ with my family. We have fun **picking out groceries**⁽⁵⁾ together.

تامر: أنا عادة أذهب إلى السوبر ماركت مع عائلتي. نستمع باختيار مستلزمات البقالة معًا.

Adel : **That sounds nice**⁽⁶⁾! Where do you go when you're hungry?

عادل: هذا يبدو رائعًا! وأين تذهب عندما تشعر بالجوع؟

Tamer : We often go to **restaurants**⁽⁷⁾ for dinner. My family likes to try different places every weekend.

تامر: غالبًا ما نذهب إلى المطاعم لتناول العشاء. عائلتي تحب تجربة أماكن مختلفة كل عطلة أسبوعية.

- ٤. متجر
- ٥. يختار البقالة
- ٦. يبدو رائعًا
- ٧. مطاعم
- ٨. هذا رائع
- ٩. مقهى
- ١٠. مريح
- ١١. مخبز
- ١٢. أرغفة
- ١٣. فكرة رائعة

Adel : **That's cool**⁽⁸⁾! Personally, I like going to the **coffee shop**⁽⁹⁾ for coffee and cake. It's so **relaxing**⁽¹⁰⁾.

عادل: هذا رائع! أما أنا، فأحب الذهاب إلى المقهى لتناول القهوة والكعك. المكان هناك مريح جدًا.

Tamer : Listen, I want to get some fresh bread from the **bakery**⁽¹¹⁾ near the park. Do you want to come with me?

تامر: اسمع، أريد أن أشتري خبزًا طازجًا من المخبز القريب من الحديقة. هل تريد أن تأتي معي؟

Adel : Oh yes! I always buy a few **loaves**⁽¹²⁾ when I'm near there. Their bread is the best.

عادل: أوه نعم! دائمًا أشتري بعض الأرغفة عندما أكون هناك. خبزهم هو الأفضل.

Tamer : Let's go this afternoon.

تامر: هيا نذهب بعد الظهر.

Adel : **Great idea**⁽¹³⁾!

عادل: فكرة رائعة!

Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



- Laila's favorite place is the
☐ a supermarket ☐ b theme park ☐ c coffee shop ☐ d club
- She goes to the club with her
☐ a family ☐ b brothers ☐ c sisters ☐ d friends
- Every, Laila shops at the supermarket to pick out groceries.
☐ a month ☐ b weekend ☐ c day ☐ d year
- She thinks it's a and fun way to connect with others.
☐ a relaxing ☐ b boring ☐ c wonderful ☐ d great

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- My mom always has coffee and cake at the
☐ a supermarket ☐ b hospital ☐ c coffee shop ☐ d neighborhood
- We pick out healthy every weekend at the supermarket.
☐ a sports ☐ b rides ☐ c groceries ☐ d clothes
- I train and sports at the club near my house.
☐ a relax ☐ b shop ☐ c bring ☐ d play
- At the, you can go on rides and have fun.
☐ a theme park ☐ b supermarket ☐ c restaurant ☐ d bakery
- I like to with friends in the neighborhood park.
☐ a pick out ☐ b pass by ☐ c hang out ☐ d shop
- I love the smell of fresh bread when I pass by the
☐ a theme park ☐ b bakery ☐ c club ☐ d coffee shop
- The waiter at the brought us a delicious meal.
☐ a supermarket ☐ b theme park ☐ c restaurant ☐ d bakery
- My favorite place to shop is the big
☐ a coffee shop ☐ b supermarket ☐ c restaurant ☐ d club

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

club - hang - pick - bakery

On weekends, I visit different places in my community. First, I go to the supermarket to ① out groceries. Then, I stop at the ② for a fresh loaf of bread. Later, I meet friends at the coffee shop to relax. Sometimes, we play sports at the ③ or go on rides at the theme park.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. weekend - I - at - the club - train - every.

2. rides - can - you - go - on - At - the theme park.

3. dinner - eat - I - the restaurant - at.

4. get - I - bakery - the - fresh - from - bread.

5. do - play - Where - we - sports?

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. what is your favorite place to visit in your community

2. nada likes going to the club

6 Write a paragraph of Thirty (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

"Your favorite place in the community"

club - hang out

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



village

قرية



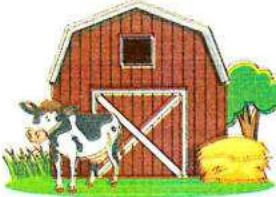
fields

حقول



main square

الساحة الرئيسية



barn

حظيرة (مزرعة)



community center

مركز مجتمعي



cottage

منزل ريفي / كوخ



Other words

كلمات أخرى

life

الحياة

farmer

فلاح

quiet

هادئ

busiest

الأكثر ازدحامًا

hills

تلال

peaceful

هادئ / مطمئن

friendly

ودود

simple

بسيط

cozy

مريح

city

مدينة



Expressions, prepositions and phrases

تعابير وحروف جر وعبارات

full of

ملئ بـ

keep/ feed animals

يربي / يطعم الحيوانات

feel calm

يبدو هادئ

surrounded by

محاط بـ

in the fields

في الحقول

have fun

يستمتع / يقضي وقتًا ممتعًا

at the market

في السوق

look at

ينظر إلى

at the community center

في المركز المجتمعي

in the village

في القرية

Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

live	يعيش
work	يعمل
walk	يمشي
enjoy	يستمتع بـ
celebrate	يحتفل
gather	يجتمع

Past ماض

lived
worked
walked
enjoyed
celebrated
gathered

Present مضارع

hear	يسمع
see	يرى
sing	يغنى
meet	يقابل
feed	يطعم
keep	يربى
sell	يبيع
spend	يقضى

Past ماض

heard
saw
sang
met
fed
kept
sold
spent

Language notes

ملاحظات لغوية

يأتى بعد الأفعال **see / hear** اما فعل في المصدر أو فعل **.ing +**

hear / see + noun / V.ing

- I **hear** birds **singing** and **see** farmers working in the fields.

enjoy + V.ing

- I **enjoy** **spending** time with the animals.

Study the following

1 I live in a small village with green fields.

- أعيش في قرية صغيرة تحيط بها الحقول الخضراء.

2 My family and I live in a cozy cottage.

- أنا وعائلتي نعيش في كوخ مريح.

3 I hear birds singing and see farmers working in the fields.

- أسمع تغريد الطيور وأرى الفلاحين يعملون في الحقول.

4 The main square is the busiest place.

- الساحة الرئيسية أكثر الأماكن ازدحاماً.

5 Farmers keep animals in the barns.

- يربى الفلاحون الحيوانات في الحظائر.

6 The community center is a fun place.

- المركز المجتمعي مكان ممتع.

7 At night, the village is quiet.

- في الليل، تكون القرية هادئة.

8 I walk near the fields and look at the stars.

- أمشي بالقرب من الحقول وأنظر إلى النجوم.

Life in My Village

الحياة في قريتي

استمع إلى النص:



I live in a small **village**⁽¹⁾ with green fields, tall trees, and quiet **hills**⁽²⁾. The people are **friendly**⁽³⁾, and the village is full of life.

أعيش في قرية صغيرة بها حقول خضراء، وأشجار طويلة. وتلال هادئة. الناس ودودون، والقرية مليئة بالحياة.

My family and I live in a **cozy cottage**⁽⁴⁾ near the **community center**⁽⁵⁾. Every morning, I hear birds singing and see **farmers**⁽⁶⁾ working in the fields. The air is fresh, and everything feels calm.



أسكن أنا وعائلتي في كوخ مريح بالقرب من مركز المجتمع. كل صباح، أسمع تغريد الطيور وأرى الفلاحين يعملون في الحقول. الهواء نقي. وكل شيء يشعرنا بالهدوء.

The **main square**⁽⁷⁾ is the busiest place. On Saturdays, people meet there to shop at the market.

الميدان الرئيسي هو أكثر الأماكن ازدحاماً. في أيام السبت، يجتمع الناس هناك للتسوق في السوق. Farmers keep animals like cows, sheep, and chickens in the **barns**⁽⁸⁾. I visit my uncle's barn to help feed the animals. The community center is a fun place. I meet my friends and play games there every Thursday.

يربى الفلاحون بالحيوانات مثل الأبقار، والخراف، والدجاج في الحظائر. أزور حظيرة عمي لأساعد في إطعام الحيوانات. المركز المجتمعي مكان ممتع. ألتقي بأصدقائي وألعب معهم هناك كل يوم خميس.

At night, the village is quiet. I walk near the fields and look at the stars.

في الليل، تكون القرية هادئة. أمشي بالقرب من الحقول وأنظر إلى النجوم.

I love my village. It is a happy place to live.

أنا أحب قريتي. إنها مكان سعيد للعيش فيه.

Arabic Meaning

١. قرية
٢. تلال
٣. ودود
٤. كوخ هادئ
٥. مركز مجتمعي
٦. الفلاحين
٧. الساحة الرئيسية
٨. حظائر

Language in use

قواعد لغوية

Prepositions of time

At

● نستخدم **at** مع أوقات اليوم **Times of Day** وأوقات الوجبات **mealtimes** والوقت **clock times** العطلات **Holidays** / الاجازات

At	at 4 o'clock	at 10:30	at noon	at midnight
	at lunchtime	at dinner time	at Christmas	at Easter

- I get up **at** 6 a.m.

الساعة

- The shop is busy **at** lunchtime.

وقت الغداء

- It's quiet **at** night.

وقت الليل

Expressions **at** مع بعض التعبيرات

at present - **at** the moment

- I'm watching TV **at** the moment.

at home, **at** school. مع الاماكن الصغيرة.

In

Years والسنوات **Seasons** والفصول **Months** والشهور **Parts of the day** مع أجزاء اليوم **in** نستخدم

In	in the morning	in the afternoon	in the evening	in April
	in November	in the summer	in the spring	in 1992
	in 2025			

- I liked visiting my uncle **in** the afternoons

- **In** December, the weather is cold.

- The weather is hot **in** summer.

- I play football **in** the afternoon. جزء من اليوم

- It's cold **in** December. شهر

- We swim **in** summer. فصل من السنة

- I was born **in** 2015. سنة

- I moved to Alexandria **in** 2020.

On

Parts of specific day و أجزاء من يوم معين **Dates** والتواريخ **Days** مع أيام الأسبوع **on** نستخدم

On	on Tuesday	on Saturday	on my birthday	on Christmas day
	on 15th June	on 1st August	on Monday morning	on Saturday evening
	on Friday night			

- We go to school **on** Sunday. يوم

- My birthday is **on** June 8th. تاريخ

Checkup Exercises ✓

1 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات مما بين القوسين:

1. We have English class (**in**) Monday.

2. They sleep late (**on**) night.

3. Marwan goes to school (**in**) 8 a.m.

4. The exam is (**at**) Tuesday morning.

5. Dina was born (**on**) 2010.

6. My sister will travel (**at**) August.



Pronunciation

استمع إلى المفردات:



A **trigraph** is a group of three letters that represents a single sound.

الـ "trigraph" هو مجموعة من ثلاثة حروف تكون صوتًا واحدًا.

① The trigraph "**dge**" sounds like "**j**". → bridge

- الحروف "**dge**" تعطي صوت /j/ مثل حرف (ج) في اللغة العربية.

② The trigraph "**tch**" sounds like "**ch**". → match

- الحروف "**tch**" تعطي صوت مثل "تش" في اللغة العربية.

③ The trigraph "**igh**" sounds like "**i**". → right

- الحروف "**igh**" تعطي صوت مثل "آي" في اللغة العربية.



bridge كوبري



fridge ثلاجة

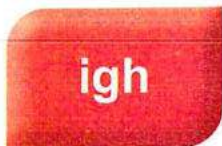


match مباراة



watch ساعة يد

witch ساحرة



right صح



flight رحلة جوية

bright لامع

Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I live in a quiet village full of green SB
☐ a farmers ☐ b restaurants ☐ c fields ☐ d animals
2. We keep cows and sheep in the SB
☐ a main square ☐ b barn
☐ c community center ☐ d market
3. The main is the busiest place in the village. SB
☐ a barn ☐ b hill ☐ c square ☐ d community
4. Farmers works in..... SB
☐ a cities ☐ b fields ☐ c cars ☐ d hospitals
5. Ali the animals in the barn. He gave them food and water.
☐ a ate ☐ b spent ☐ c sang ☐ d fed
6. Our cottage is by a peaceful garden.
☐ a celebrated ☐ b worked ☐ c surrounded ☐ d enjoyed

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: SB

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

square - meeting - animals - cottages

Life in a village is peaceful and simple. People live in cozy ① surrounded by green fields and fresh air. There is a market in the main ② where people buy and sell fresh fruit and vegetables. Farmers keep their ③ in barns. Children have fun at the community center.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Youssef is a farmer who works in the fields every day. His village is full of life where children play, farmers sell fresh crops at the market, and people sing traditional songs.

In the evening, Youssef meets his friends at the community center. They talk, laugh, and enjoy their time together. The village is friendly, and everyone helps each other. Youssef loves his simple life. At night, he sits outside his cottage and looks at the stars. The quiet village makes him feel calm and happy.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The passage is about Youssef's
☐ a village ☐ b life ☐ c friends ☐ d cottage

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

Unit 4 My community

2. The village is full of

a cars

b life

c kites

d planes

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What does Youssef do at night?

4. What does the underlined pronoun "They" refer to?

5. Why do you think Youssef loves his village?

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

1. meet - Thursday - my - every - **I** - friends

2. animals - in - **Farmers** - the - keep - barns

3. lives - cottage - **Ahmed** - a cozy - in

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. I was born (**on**) March. **SB**

2. Let's meet (**in**) 3 p.m. **SB**

3. The party is (**at**) Friday. **SB**

4. I like to relax (**on**) the evening. **SB**

5. I celebrate my birthday (**in**) August 14th. **SB**

6. I usually exercise (**on**) the afternoon.

7. What do you usually do (**in**) night?

8. All my family gather (**on**) Christmas.

9. I'm busy (**in**) the moment.

10. School ends (**on**) June.

11. My grandfather reads the newspaper (**in**) lunchtime.

6 Write a paragraph of Thirty (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

Life in a village

barn - calm

.....

.....

.....

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



reduce crowding	يقلل الازدحام	Iconic Tower	البرج الأيقوني
smart	ذكي	steel	فولاذ / صلب
the New Administrative Capital	العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة	government	الحكومة

Other words

كلمات أخرى

almost	تقريبًا	important	هام / مهم
everywhere	في كل مكان	building	مبنى
km (kilometer)	كيلومتر	Africa	قارة أفريقيا
east	شرق	airport	مطار
modern technology	التكنولوجيا الحديثة	floor	طابق / دور
road	طريق	top	قمة
energy	طاقة	whole	كل
green areas	مساحات خضراء	job	وظيفة
comfortable	مريح	safe	آمن
builder	عامل البناء	healthy	صحي

Expressions, prepositions and phrases

تعابير وأحرف جر وعبارات

designed to	صممت لـ	feel like a home	يشعر وكأنه منزله
is used to	تستخدم في	almost everything	كل شيء تقريبًا

Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	
reduce	يقلل
design	يصمم
manage	يدير / يتحكم
locate	يحدد (موقع)

Past ماض	
reduced	
designed	
managed	
located	

Present مضارع	
build	يبني
has/have	يمتلك / عنده

Past ماض	
built	
had	

Language notes

ملاحظات لغوية

help + inf. مصدر الفعل / to + inf.

- The New Administrative Capital is a new city that helps **reduce** crowding in Cairo.

1
help + inf.

(be) made of + المادة الخام → صنع من

- The Iconic Tower **is made of** strong glass and steel.

2
(be)
made of
صنع من

- The New Administrative Capital **is located** 45 km east of Cairo.

3
(be) located
تقع / توجد

نستخدم (How tall?) كم طول؟ للسؤال عن الطول

- **How tall** is the Iconic Tower?

4
How tall?
كم طول؟

Study the following

1 The New Administrative Capital is located 45 km east of Cairo.

- تقع العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة على بُعد ٤٥ كم شرق القاهرة.

2 The New Administrative Capital helps reduce crowding in Cairo.

- تساعد العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة على تقليل الازدحام في القاهرة.

3 The New Administrative Capital is designed to be very smart.

- تم تصميم العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة لتكون ذكية جداً.

4 Modern technology is used to manage roads, water and energy.

- تُستخدم التكنولوجيا الحديثة لإدارة الطرق والمياه والطاقة.

5 The New Administrative Capital has green areas everywhere.

- تحتوي العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة على مساحات خضراء في كل مكان.

6 The New Administrative Capital has government offices and important buildings.

- تضم العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة مكاتب حكومية ومباني مهمة.

7 The Iconic Tower is 385 meters high and has 80 floors.

- يبلغ ارتفاع البرج الأيقوني ٣٨٥ مترًا وله ٨٠ طابقًا.

8 The Iconic Tower is made of strong glass and steel.

- البرج الأيقوني مصنوع من الزجاج القوي والفولاذ.

9 People can find great jobs and have a peaceful life.

- يمكن للناس إيجاد وظائف رائعة و عيش حياة هادئة.

Listen and read:

استمع واقرأ:

Egypt's New City مدينة مصر الجديدة

استمع إلى النص:



Egypt builds new cities almost everywhere.

تقوم مصر ببناء مدن جديدة في كل مكان تقريبًا.

My family and I live in the New Administrative Capital⁽¹⁾, 45 km east⁽²⁾ of Cairo. It's a new city that helps reduce crowding⁽³⁾ in Cairo.



تعيش عائلتي وأنا في العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة، على بُعد ٤٥ كم شرق القاهرة. إنها مدينة جديدة تساعد على تقليل الازدحام في القاهرة.

The city is designed⁽⁴⁾ to be very smart⁽⁵⁾. Modern technology is used to manage⁽⁶⁾ roads, water, energy⁽⁷⁾ and almost everything.

تم تصميم المدينة لتكون ذكية جدًا. تُستخدم التكنولوجيا الحديثة لإدارة الطرق والمياه والطاقة وكل شيء تقريبًا.

The city has green areas everywhere. It has also government offices⁽⁸⁾ and important buildings. The city where I live has the tallest building in Africa, the Iconic Tower⁽⁹⁾, and a new airport⁽¹⁰⁾!

توجد في المدينة مساحات خضراء في كل مكان. كما تضم مكاتب حكومية ومباني مهمة. المدينة

التي أعيش فيها تحتوي على أطول مبنى في إفريقيا، وهو البرج الأيقوني، ومطار جديد!

The Iconic Tower is 385 meters high and has 80 floors. It is made of strong glass and steel⁽¹¹⁾. From the top, I can see the whole city!

يبلغ ارتفاع البرج الأيقوني ٣٨٥ مترًا وله ٨٠ طابقًا. وهو مصنوع من الزجاج القوي والفولاذ. ومن الأعلى أستطيع رؤية المدينة كلها!

People here can find great jobs and have a peaceful life. It is my favorite city in Egypt.

يمكن للناس هنا إيجاد وظائف رائعة والعيش حياة هادئة. إنها مدينتي المفضلة في مصر.

Arabic Meaning

١. العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة
٢. شرق
٣. يقلل الازدحام
٤. صمم
٥. ذكي
٦. يدير
٧. الطاقة
٨. مكاتب حكومية
٩. البرج الأيقوني
١٠. مطار
١١. فولاذ

Elements of Writing Narrative Text

خصائص كتابة النص السردى



A Research

Learn تعلم

- Why Do We Research Anything?

لماذا نقوم بالبحث عن شئ؟

That's easy! We research to learn something new—something we didn't know before.

هذا سهل! نحن نبحث لتتعلم شيئاً جديداً - شيئاً لم تكن نعرفه من قبل

Steps الخطوات

Look at the model, below.

انظر إلى النموذج

Here are four easy steps to get you started.

إليك أربع خطوات سهلة لتبدأ بها :

1. Pick a topic. - اختر موضوعاً	1. The Pyramids. - الأهرامات
2. Ask a question (?) - اطرح سؤالاً	2. When were they built? - متى بنيت؟
3. Look for information. - ابحث عن المعلومات	3. Built between 2600 and 2500 BC, in Giza. Khofu, Khafre, Menkaure. - بنيت بين عامى 2600 و 2500 قبل الميلاد، خوفو، خفرع، منقرع
4. Organize what you find. - نظم ما تجده	4. List the information in complete sentences. - اكتب المعلومات في جمل كاملة

Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- The New Administrative Capital has many green
 a books b airports c floors d areas
- The offices are located in tall buildings.
 a government b crowding c energy d floor
- New roads will help reduce city problems.
 a comfortable b safe c crowding d jobs
- The is the tallest in Africa.
 a Iconic Tower b New Administrative Capital
 c Office d Airport
- The tower has more than eighty
 a airports b areas c floors d villages
- Builders often use strong to build towers.
 a steel b air c water d paper
- The whole capital is and comfortable.
 a dangerous b unhealthy c safe d unsafe
- The city is very It uses technology everywhere.
 a old b smart c whole d unimportant

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

comfortable - tallest- managed - located

The government designed the New Administrative Capital to reduce crowding. It is ① east of Cairo, with wide roads and many green areas. The Iconic Tower ,made of steel and glass, is the ② in Africa. The whole city is safe and ③

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً.

1. tall - Iconic - is - How - the - Tower?

2. manage - technology - roads - used to - Modern - is

3. cities - Egypt - new - everywhere - builds - almost.

4. the top, - see - city - From - the whole - I - can

4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. why is modern technology used

2. the city has green areas everywhere

5 Write a paragraph of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding words:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

"A new city"

towers- smart

Review

on Unit 4

Key vocabulary



restaurant

مطعم



coffee shop

مقهى



bakery

مخبز



supermarket

متجر



club

نادى رياضى



theme park

مدينة الملاهى / متنزه



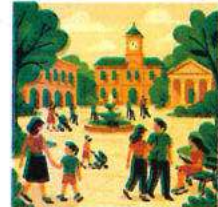
village

قرية



fields

حقول



main square

الساحة الرئيسية



barn

حظيرة (مزرعة)



community center

مركز مجتمعى



cottage

منزل ريفى / كوخ

Unit 4 My community

community	مجتمع	neighborhood	حي سكني
reduce crowding	يقلل الازدحام	Iconic Tower	البرج الأيقوني
smart	ذكي	steel	فولاذ/ صلب
the New Administrative Capital	العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة	government	الحكومة
km (kilometer)	كيلومتر	building	مبنى
modern technology	التكنولوجيا الحديثة	Africa	قارة أفريقيا
road	طريق	airport	مطار
energy	طاقة	floor	طابق/ دور
green areas	مساحات خضراء	safe	آمن
comfortable	مريح	healthy	صحي
builder	عامل البناء		

Conjugation of verbs تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع	
relax	يسترخي
try	يحاول/ يجرب
train	يتدرب
shop	يتسوق
walk	يمشي
enjoy	يستمتع بـ
celebrate	يحتفل
gather	يجتمع
reduce	يقلل
design	يصمم
manage	يدير/ يتحكم
locate	يحدد (موقع)

Past ماض

relaxed
tried
trained
shopped
walked
enjoyed
celebrated
gathered
reduced
designed
managed
located

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	
buy	يشترى
drink	يشرب
bring	يحضر
hear	يسمع
sing	يغنى
feed	يطعم
keep	يربى
sell	يبيع
spend	يقضى
build	يبني

Past ماض

bought
drank
brought
heard
sang
fed
kept
sold
spent
built

Language in use

Prepositions of time

At

نستخدم **at** مع أوقات اليوم **Times of Day** وأوقات الوجبات **mealtimes** والوقت **clock times** والعطلات **Holidays** / الاجازات

At	at 4 o'clock	at 10:30	at noon	at midnight
	at lunchtime	at dinner time	at Christmas	at Easter

- I get up **at** 6 a.m. الساعة
- The shop is busy **at** lunchtime. وقت الغداء
- It's quiet **at** night. وقت الليل

نستخدم ايضا **at** مع بعض التعبيرات **Expressions**

- at** present - **at** the moment
- I'm watching TV **at** the moment.

نستخدم **at** مع الاماكن الصغيرة. **at home, at school.**

In

نستخدم **in** مع أجزاء اليوم **Parts of the day** والشهور **Months** والفصول **Seasons** والسنوات **Years**

In	in the morning	in the afternoon	in the evening	in April
	in November	in the summer	in the spring	in 1992
	in 2025			

- I liked visiting my uncle **in** the afternoons
- **In** December, the weather is cold.
- The weather is hot **in** summer.
- I play football **in** the afternoon. جزء من اليوم
- It's cold **in** December. شهر
- We swim **in** summer. فصل من السنة
- I was born **in** 2015. سنة
- I moved to Alexandria **in** 2020.

On

نستخدم **on** مع أيام الأسبوع **Days** والتواريخ **Dates** وأجزاء من يوم معين **Parts of specific day**

On	on Tuesday	on Saturday	on my birthday	on Christmas day
	on 15th June	on 1st August	on Monday morning	on Saturday evening
	on Friday night			

- We go to school **on** Sunday. يوم
- My birthday is **on** June 8th. تاريخ



Answers to Paragraphs

1

Lesson 1

"Your favorite place in the community"

My favorite place in the community is the club. I go there every weekend. I hang out with friends, play sports, and train. It's fun, healthy, and relaxing.

2

Lessons 2&3

Life in a village

Life in a village is peaceful and simple. Farmers work in the fields and feed animals in the barns. Children play outside and have fun at the community center. Village life feels cozy and calm.

3

Lessons 4&5

"A new city"

The New Administrative Capital is a new and important city in Africa. It is located east of Cairo. It has comfortable offices, healthy homes, and green areas everywhere. The government built it to reduce crowding and save energy.

4

Test on Unit 4

Your weekend

On weekends, I visit my grandparents in the village. I help them feed the animals in the barn. At lunchtime, we cook together. In the evening, we walk through green fields, enjoying the fresh air.

A- Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

استمع وأختَر:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. Omar's is in a smart building near the Iconic Tower.

(school - office - home)

2. He enjoys on safe roads with green areas everywhere.

(playing - running - walking)

3. Omar says it feels like a

(office - home - building)

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog:

اقرأ وأكمل:

Why - club - hang - go

Ali : Where do you on weekends?

Marwan : I go to the

Ali : do you go there?

Marwan : To play sports and out with my friends.

C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read the text and answer questions:

اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة:

Ahmed loves his neighborhood. On weekends, he goes to the coffee shop with friends. They hang out, drink fresh coffee, and connect with others. Sometimes, they go to the theme park to play sports or go on rides. Ahmed's favorite place is the bakery. He buys a loaf of bread and enjoys its smell. His mother shops at the supermarket for groceries. The club is near his house. Ahmed enjoys his time in the neighborhood.

A: Choose the correct answer:

1. Ahmed's favorite place is the

☐ a supermarket

☐ b club

☐ c coffee shop

☐ d the bakery

Unit 4 My community

2. shops at the supermarket for groceries.

a Ahmed's friends

b Ahmed's mother

c Ahmed's father

d Ahmed's sister

3. The is near Ahmed's house.

a coffee shop

b supermarket

c club

d theme park

B: Answer the following questions:

4. When does Ahmed go to the coffee shop?

5. What do Ahmed and his friends do at the theme park?

D- Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة :

1. We can buy bread and cakes at a

a theme park

b bakery

c club

d cinema

2. I like the because I enjoy spending time with the animals.

a barn

b community center

c main square

d cottage

3. The Iconic Tower is made of strong

a paper

b juice

c steel

d liquid

4. I travel to Aswan February.

a on

b at

c in

d for

5. The restaurant closes 10 p.m.

a on

b at

c in

d for

E- Writing

5 Rearrange the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة :

1. theme park - go - rides - We - at - the - on

2. are - the - located - Where - Pyramids?

3. like - in - evening - I - relax - to - the

4. sister - shops - supermarket - My - the - at

5. quiet - The - is - night - at - village

Test on Unit 4

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



- Sara lives in a small
☐ a square ☐ b village ☐ c field ☐ d hill
- Sara's grandfather is a
☐ a farmer ☐ b doctor ☐ c pilot ☐ d mechanic
- On, she visits the market in the main square.
☐ a Mondays ☐ b weekends ☐ c Thursdays ☐ d Wednesdays
- Sara always feels in the fresh air.
☐ a sad ☐ b happy ☐ c worried ☐ d calm

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- We can relax and drink coffee at a
☐ a bakery ☐ b supermarket ☐ c coffee shop ☐ d club
- Farmers keep animals in the
☐ a cottages ☐ b main square ☐ c barns ☐ d community center
- We try to crowding to keep us safe, healthy, and comfortable.
☐ a surround ☐ b design ☐ c reduce ☐ d find

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

smart - buildings - dangerous - safe

I visit a new city today. I see many tall ¹ made of glass and steel. I walk in clean streets with green trees. I stop at a nice coffee shop and drink fresh juice. Nearby, I find a big park where children play. Everything looks new and ² The city feels ³ and comfortable. I want to live here one day!

Unit 4 My community

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Egypt builds new cities almost everywhere. My family and I live in the New Administrative Capital, 45 km east of Cairo. It's a new city that helps reduce crowding in Cairo. The city is designed to be very smart. Modern technology is used to manage roads, water, energy, and almost everything.

The city has green areas everywhere. It has also government offices and important buildings. The city where I live has the tallest building in Africa, the Iconic Tower, and a new airport.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The New Administrative Capital is of Cairo.
a west **b** north **c** east **d** south
- The Iconic Tower is the building in Africa.
a oldest **b** tallest **c** smallest **d** newest

B. Answer the following questions:

- Why was the New Administrative Capital built?
- What services does modern technology help manage in the city?
- Summarize the passage in one sentence

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:
- new - designed - to - smart - The - is - city - be
 - a market - in - is - the - square - There - main

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:
- I celebrate my birthday **(at)** April 6th.
 - Salma was born **(on)** 2012.

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- my dad watches TV at night
- Where do you go on Saturdays

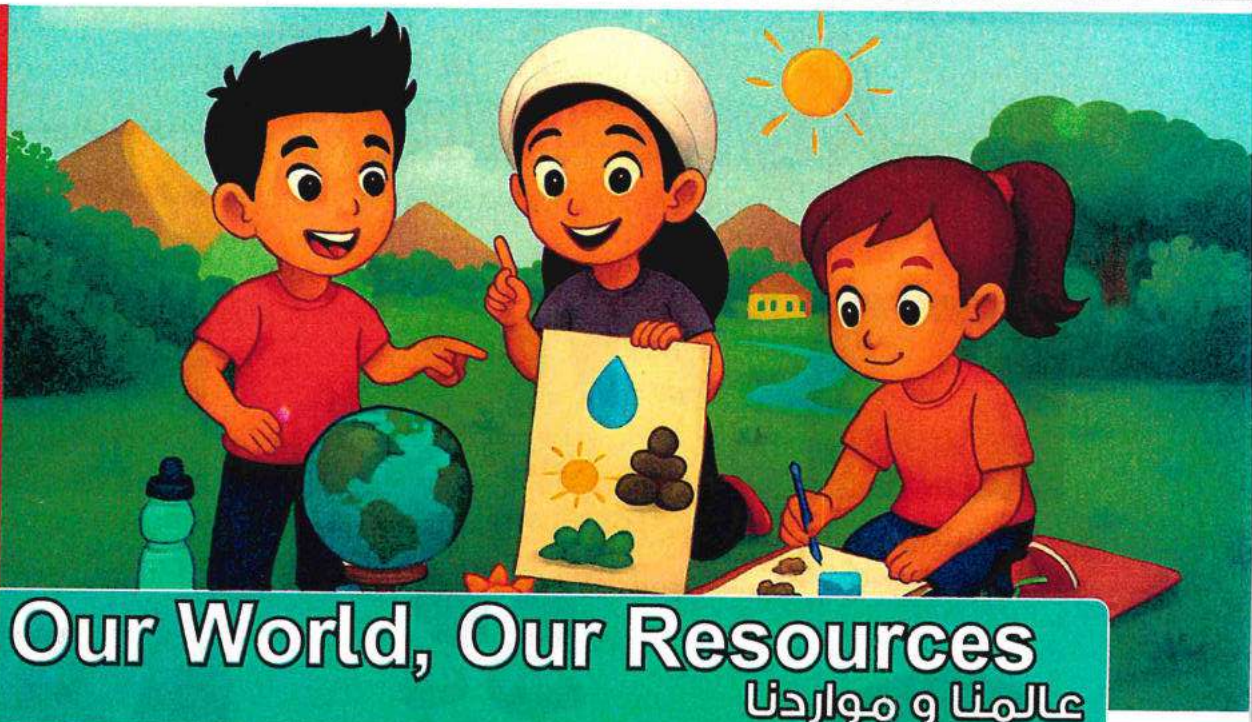
8 Write a paragraph of Thirty (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

"Your weekend"

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

visit - enjoy



Our World, Our Resources

عالمنا و مواردها

Learning Outcomes

Speaking:

- Ask and answer questions about natural resources in Egypt.

يسأل ويجيب الطالب عن الموارد الطبيعية في مصر.

- Discuss the importance of natural resources.

يناقش الطالب أهمية الموارد الطبيعية.

- Identify the stressed syllable in words with prefixes.

يتعرف الطالب على المقطع الصوتي المشدد في الكلمات التي تحتوي على بادئات.

Listening:

- Listen to a dialog and answer comprehension questions.

يستمع الطالب إلى حوار ثم يجيب عن أسئلة فهم.

- Identify vocabulary related to natural resources.

يتعرف الطالب على مفردات تخص الموارد الطبيعية.

Reading:

- Demonstrate understanding by answering comprehension questions on a text about natural resources.

يُظهر الطالب فهمه بقراءة نص عن الموارد الطبيعية والإجابة عن أسئلة فهم.

- Identify and understand vocabulary related to natural resources.

يتعرف ويفهم الطالب الكلمات المتعلقة بالموارد الطبيعية.

Writing:

- Complete sentences using comparative adjectives.

يكمل الطالب الجمل باستخدام صفات المقارنة.

- Write a descriptive paragraph about natural resources and ways to conserve them.

يكتب الطالب فقرة وصفية عن الموارد الطبيعية وطرق الحفاظ عليها.

Lesson

1

★ The Gifts of Nature

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



sunlight

أشعة الشمس / ضوء الشمس



fossil fuel وقود حفري



water

ماء



soil

تربة



minerals

معادن



wind

رياح

nature

الطبيعة

natural gas

غاز طبيعي

cotton

قطن

fuel

وقود

electricity

الكهرباء

natural resources

مصادر طبيعية

wheat

قمح

fertile land

ارض خصبة

iron

حديد



Other words

كلمات أخرى

treasures

كنوز

The Nile River

نهر النيل

oil company

شركة بترول

region

منطقة

buildings

مباني

daily life

الحياة اليومية

farming

زراعة

excellent

ممتاز

gold

معدن الذهب

jewelry

مجوهرات

Expressions, prepositions and phrases

تعبيرات وحروف جر وعبارات

talk about	يتكلم عن	along the Nile	على طول النيل
The most important water resource	أهم مصدر للماء	That's right!	هذا صحيح!
Well done!	أحسن صنعاً	works for	يعمل لدى
are used to	يستخدم لـ	kinds of	أنواع من
for drinking and farming.	للشرب والزراعة		

Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ	Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
talk يتحدث	talked	know يعرف	knew
help يساعد	helped	find يجد	found
work يعمل	worked	make يصنع	made
provide يمد / زود	provided	grow يزرع / ينمو	grew
use يستخدم	used	read يقرأ	read
name يذكر / يسمي	named		

Definitions

تعريفات

natural resources مصادر طبيعية	things from nature that help us live أشياء من الطبيعة تساعدنا على العيش.
fertile خصب	A land with rich soil to grow food. أرض تحتوي على تربة غنية لزراعة الطعام.
minerals معادن	crystals and metals, like gold and copper بلورات ومعادن مثل الذهب والنحاس.
electricity الكهرباء	The energy used to power homes and machines. الطاقة التي تُستخدم لتشغيل المنازل والآلات.
cotton قطن	A soft, white plant that is used to make fabric نبات أبيض ناعم يُستخدم لصنع القماش.

Study the following

1 Today, we will talk about natural resources.

اليوم سنتحدث عن الموارد الطبيعية.

2 They are things we find in nature, like water and trees.

هي أشياء نجدها في الطبيعة، مثل الماء والأشجار.

3 Natural resources help us in our daily lives.

الموارد الطبيعية تساعدنا في حياتنا اليومية.

4 Can you name a natural resource we can find in Egypt?

هل يمكنك أن تذكر موردًا طبيعيًا يمكن أن نجده في مصر؟

5 The Nile River! It provides water for drinking and farming.

نهر النيل! إنه يوفر الماء للشرب والزراعة.

6 The Nile is the most important water resource in Egypt.

النيل هو أهم مورد مائي في مصر.

7 Oil and natural gas are used to make fuel and electricity.

يُستخدم النفط والغاز الطبيعي لصنع الوقود والكهرباء.

8 We grow cotton, wheat, and many kinds of fruit.

نزرع القطن والقمح وأنواعًا كثيرة من الفاكهة.

9 The fertile land along the Nile and in the Delta region helps us grow food.

الأرض الخصبة على ضفاف النيل وفي منطقة الدلتا تساعدنا على زراعة الطعام.

10 Egypt's deserts contain gold, iron, and other minerals, as well.

صحاري مصر تحتوي على الذهب والحديد ومعادن أخرى أيضًا.

11 They're used to make jewelry, make buildings, and help our country grow.

تُستخدم لصنع المجوهرات وبناء المباني ومساعدة بلدنا على التقدم.

Read the text

اقرأ النص:

استمع إلى النص:



Mr. Hani and his students are **discussing**⁽¹⁾ natural resources.

الأستاذ هاني وتلاميذه يناقشون الموارد الطبيعية.

Mr. Hani: Good morning, class! Today, we will talk about **natural resources**⁽²⁾. Do you know what natural resources are?

الأستاذ هاني: صباح الخير ايها الطلاب والطالبات! اليوم سنتحدث عن الموارد الطبيعية. هل تعرفون ما هي الموارد الطبيعية؟

Ali: Yes! They are things we find in nature, like water and trees.

علي: نعم! هي أشياء نجدها في الطبيعة، مثل الماء والأشجار.

Mr. Hani: Very good! Natural resources help us in our daily lives. Can you name a natural resource we can find in Egypt?

الأستاذ هاني: أحسنت! الموارد الطبيعية تساعدنا في حياتنا اليومية. هل يمكنك أن تسمي موردًا

طبيعيًا نجده في مصر؟



Mona: The Nile River! It **provides**⁽³⁾ water for drinking and farming.

منى: نهر النيل! إنه يوفر الماء للشرب والزراعة.

Mr. Hani: Excellent! The Nile is the most important water resource in Egypt. What other **treasures**⁽⁴⁾ does Egypt have?

الأستاذ هاني: ممتاز! النيل هو أهم مورد مائي في مصر. ما الكنوز الأخرى التي تملكها مصر؟

Ali: We have oil and natural gas. My uncle works for an **oil company**⁽⁵⁾.

علي: لدينا البترول والغاز الطبيعي. عمي يعمل في شركة بترول.

Mr. Hani: That's right! Oil and natural gas are used to make **fuel**⁽⁶⁾ and electricity. What about farming?

الأستاذ هاني: صحيح! يُستخدم البترول والغاز الطبيعي لصنع الوقود والكهرباء. وماذا عن الزراعة؟

Mona: We grow cotton, wheat, and many kinds of fruit.

منى: نزرع القطن والقمح وأنواعًا كثيرة من الفاكهة.

Mr. Hani: Well done! The **fertile land**⁽⁷⁾ along the Nile and in the **Delta region**⁽⁸⁾ helps us grow food.

الأستاذ هاني: أحسنت صنعًا! الأرض الخصبة على ضفاف النيل وفي منطقة الدلتا تساعدنا على زراعة الطعام.

Ali: I read that Egypt has **minerals**⁽⁹⁾, too, like gold!

علي: قرأت أن في مصر معادن أيضًا، مثل الذهب!

Mr. Hani: That's right! Egypt's deserts contain gold, iron, and other minerals, as well.

الأستاذ هاني: هذا صحيح! تحتوي صحارى مصر على الذهب والحديد ومعادن أخرى أيضًا.

Mona: They're used to make **jewelry**⁽¹⁰⁾, make buildings, and help our country grow.

منى: تُستخدم لصنع المجوهرات وبناء المباني ومساعدة بلدنا على التقدم.

Mr. Hani: Well done, class.

الأستاذ هاني: أحسنتم ايها الطلاب والطالبات.

Arabic Meaning

١. يناقش
٢. مصادر طبيعية
٣. يمد
٤. كنوز
٥. شركة نفط
٦. وقود
٧. الأرض الخصبة
٨. منطقة الدلتا
٩. معادن
١٠. مجوهرات

Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- are things from nature that help us live.
☐ a Natural resources ☐ b Regions ☐ c Books ☐ d Names
- We use to make fabric.
☐ a cotton ☐ b sugar ☐ c rice ☐ d iron
- We use oil and gas to make
☐ a food ☐ b fuel ☐ c clothes ☐ d buildings
- Gold and iron are we find in the desert.
☐ a rivers ☐ b fruits ☐ c minerals ☐ d farms
- The land in the Delta is very so we grow many crops.
☐ a salty ☐ b rocky ☐ c fertile ☐ d empty
- The Nile River is the most important resource in Egypt.
☐ a wind ☐ b water ☐ c sand ☐ d oil
- Natural resources like minerals help our country
☐ a sleep ☐ b play ☐ c write ☐ d grow
- Egypt's deserts contain many, such as gold and iron.
☐ a companies ☐ b crops ☐ c minerals ☐ d secrets

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

cotton - resources - fuel - school

Egypt has many natural resources that come from nature and help people live and work. The Nile River gives us water for drinking and farming. The land near the Nile is fertile, so farmers grow food and plants like ① Egypt also has oil and gas. These are used to make ② and electricity for homes and factories. Natural ③ are very important for our country.

3 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Today at school, Mr. Hani talked to us about natural resources. **He** said they are things we find in nature, like water and trees. They help us in our daily lives. He asked us to name a natural resource in Egypt. Mona said the Nile River, and she explained that it gives us water for drinking and farming. Mr. Hani said the Nile is the most important water resource in Egypt. Ali said that Egypt also has oil and natural gas. His uncle works for an oil company. Mr. Hani explained that oil and gas are used to make fuel and electricity.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Natural resources are things we find in
 a school b nature c books d cities
2. The Nile River gives water for
 a driving and flying b swimming and playing
 c drinking and farming d cleaning and washing

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What does the underlined pronoun He refer to?
4. What are oil and natural gas used to make?
5. Where does Ali's uncle work?

4 Put the words in the correct order to make a sentence.

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. cotton - grow - Farmers - and - wheat
2. is - long - river - The - Nile - a

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. What does egypt grow
2. oil gas and minerals are important

6 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

Natural Resources in Egypt

iron - gold

★ Metals and Minerals in Our World

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



mineral resources	الموارد المعدنية	strong metal	معدن قوي
gold	ذهب	electrical wires	أسلاك كهربائية
diamond	الالماس	pipes	أنابيب
copper	نحاس	tools	أدوات
iron	حديد	airplane	طائرة
coins	عملات معدنية	bridge	كوبرى
jewelry	مجوهرات	miners	عمال مناجم
rare mineral	معدن نادر	non-renewable	غير متجددة
more valuable	أكثر قيمة		



Other words

كلمات أخرى

shiny	ساطع / لامع	easy	سهل
ring	خاتم	cheaper	ارخص
Eastern Desert	الصحراء الغربية	super strong	قوي جدا
deep	عميق	ground	أرض
millions of years	ملايين السنين	wisely	بحكمة
perfect	مثالي	precious	ثمين
real jewelry	مجوهرات حقيقية	chargers	شواحن
fans	مراوح	underground	تحت الارض



Expressions, prepositions and phrases

تعابير وحروف جر وعبارات

under the earth	تحت الأرض	easy to shape	سهل أن تتشكل
make important things	يصنع اشياء مهمة	into the ground	في الأرض
great for	مناسب جدا لـ	hidden treasures	كنوز مخفية
a few months	شهور قليلة	perfect for	مثالي لـ
save energy	يوفر الطاقة		

Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	
waste	يضيع
use	يستخدم
help	يساعد
save	ينقذ

Past ماض	
wasted	
used	
helped	
saved	

Present مضارع	
find	يجد
make	يصنع
take	يأخذ
get	يحصل على
dig	يحفر

Past ماض	
found	
made	
took	
got	
dug	

Study the following

- Under the earth, we find precious mineral resources like gold, diamond, copper, and iron.
تحت الأرض، نجد موارد معدنية ثمينة كالذهب والماس والنحاس والحديد.
- Gold is soft, shiny, and easy to shape.
الذهب ناعم ولامع ووسهل التشكيل.
- People use it for coins and jewelry. I love gold rings!
يستخدمه الناس في صنع العملات والمجوهرات. أنا أحب الخواتم الذهب!
- Diamond is a rare mineral-even more valuable than gold!
الماس معدن نادر، بل أثمن من الذهب!
- Copper is a strong metal which we use for electrical wires, pipes, and tools.
النحاس معدن قوي نستخدمه في صناعة الأسلاك الكهربائية والأنابيب والأدوات.
- Egypt gets most of its copper and gold from the Eastern Desert.
تحصل مصر على معظم نحاسها وذهبها من الصحراء الشرقية.
- Iron is super strong.
الحديد معدن فائق القوة.
- Minerals are nonrenewable-they take millions of years to form!
المعادن غير متجددة إذ يستغرق تكوينها ملايين السنين!
- So we must use them wisely and never waste them.
لذا يجب علينا استخدامه بحكمة وعدم إهداره.

Read the text

اقرأ النص:

Hidden Treasures⁽¹⁾ كنوز دفيئة

استمع إلى النص:



Under the earth, we find precious⁽²⁾ mineral resources⁽³⁾ like gold, diamond⁽⁴⁾, copper⁽⁵⁾, and iron. These are used every day to make important things.

تحت الأرض، نجد موارد معدنية ثمينة كالذهب والماس والنحاس والحديد. تُستخدم هذه المعادن يومياً في صنع أشياء مهمة..

Arabic Meaning

1. كنوز دفيئة
2. ثمين
3. موارد معدنية
4. الماس
5. نحاس

Unit 5 Our World, Our Resources

Gold is soft, **shiny**⁽⁶⁾, and easy to shape. People use it for coins and **jewelry**⁽⁷⁾. I love gold rings!

الذهب ناعمٌ ولا مَع وسهل التشكيل. يستخدمه الناس في صنع العملات المعدنية والمجوهرات. أنا أحب الخواتم الذهبية.



Diamond is a **rare**⁽⁸⁾ mineral-even more **valuable**⁽⁹⁾ than gold!

الماس معدنٌ نادر، بل أثمن من الذهب.

Copper is a strong metal which we use for **electrical wires**⁽¹⁰⁾, pipes, and tools. It's cheaper than gold. Egypt gets most of its copper and gold from the **Eastern Desert**⁽¹¹⁾.

النحاس معدنٌ قويٌ نستخدمه في الأسلاك الكهربائية والأنابيب والأدوات. وهو أرخص من الذهب. تحصل مصر على معظم نحاسها وذهبها من الصحراء الشرقية.

Iron is super strong. It helps make cars, ships, airplanes, and bridges. It's found in many places in Egypt.

الحديد معدنٌ قائق القوة، يُستخدم في صناعة السيارات والسفن والطائرات والكبارى. يوجد في أماكن عديدة في مصر.

٦. لامع
٧. مجوهرات
٨. نادر
٩. ثمين
١٠. أسلاك كهربائية
١١. الصحراء الشرقية
١٢. غير متجددة
١٣. يتشكل
١٤. بحكمة

To get minerals, miners dig deep into the ground. But minerals are **nonrenewable**⁽¹²⁾-they take millions of years to **form**⁽¹³⁾! So we must use them **wisely**⁽¹⁴⁾ and never waste them.

للحصول على المعادن، يحفر عمال المناجم في أعماق الأرض. لكن المعادن غير متجددة، إذ تستغرق ملايين السنين لتتشكل! لذلك يجب أن نستخدمها بحكمة ولا نُهدرها أبداً.

Language notes

ملاحظات لغوية

Comparative Adjectives مقارنة الصفات

- Comparative adjectives are used to compare two people, things, animals, etc.

• تُستخدم صفات المقارنة لمقارنة شخصين أو حيوانين أو غير ذلك.

• تنقسم الصفات إلى صفات قصيرة **Short adjectives** وصفات طويلة **Long adjectives**

Short adjectives الصفات القصيرة

• تتكون أغلب الصفات القصيرة من مقطع صوتي واحد، وهناك بعضها يتكون من مقطعين.

Short adjectives = one syllable (مقطع واحد)

Ex: tall big small fast slow cold hot

Form صيغة المقارنة

شخص / شئ + adjective + er + than شخص / شئ

Ex: Gold is cheaper than diamond.

Spelling Rules:

⊙ لاحظ الآتي:

⊙ الصفات التي تنتهي بحرف (y)، نغير (y) إلى (i) ثم نضيف (-er).

heavy → heavier

happy → happier

Ex: Amira is **happier than** Mohamed.

⊙ إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف e نضيف إليها r فقط

nice → nicer

large → larger

⊙ بعض الصفات نضاعف بها الحرف الأخير عند إضافة er

fat → fatter

thin → thinner

big → bigger

Irregular Adjectives صفة شاذة

⊙ بعض الصفات لها صيغ مقارنة غير منتظمة.

Adjective	Comparative	Arabic Meaning (المعنى بالعربية)
good	better than	أفضل من
bad	worse than	أسوأ من
little	less than	أقل من
many / much	more than	أكثر من

Ex: This test is **better than** the last one.

مثال: هذا الاختبار أفضل من الاختبار السابق.

Long adjectives ثانيا الصفات الطويلة

Ex: beautiful – expensive – dangerous – comfortable

Form: التكوين

شئ + than + شخص / شئ + more/less + adjective + شخص / شئ

⊙ مع الصفات الطويلة (التي تتكون من مقطعين أو أكثر)، نستخدم "more" أو "less" قبل الصفة، و "than" بعدها.

Ex: Diamond is **more valuable than** gold. (الألماس أكثر قيمة من الذهب).

Ex: This dress is **more beautiful than** that one. (هذا الفستان أجمل من ذاك).

Ex: A lion is **more dangerous than** a cat. (الأسد أخطر من القط).

Ex: A car is **more expensive than** a bike. (السيارة أغلى من الدراجة).

Check up Exercises

1. Fatma is (**short**) than Ahmed.
2. Bananas are (**delicious**) than apples.
3. The car is faster (**than**) the bike.
4. The ring is (**expensive**) than the bag.

Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



- Gold is soft, shiny, and easy to
☐ a break ☐ b melt ☐ c shape ☐ d find
- People use gold to make coins and
☐ a airplanes ☐ b jewelry ☐ c tools ☐ d clothes
- Copper is a strong metal used for wires, pipes, and
☐ a cars ☐ b books ☐ c tools ☐ d gold
- Egypt gets most of its copper and gold from the Desert.
☐ a Western ☐ b White ☐ c Eastern ☐ d Red

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- Miners dig deep into the to find minerals.
☐ a school ☐ b station ☐ c ground ☐ d sky
- Gold is soft and easy to
☐ a cut ☐ b shape ☐ c throw ☐ d lift
- We must use minerals because they are non-renewable.
☐ a quickly ☐ b loudly ☐ c wisely ☐ d easily
- We use to make electrical wires.
☐ a wood ☐ b glass ☐ c copper ☐ d paper
- Gold is perfect for because it is shiny and valuable.
☐ a wood ☐ b jewelry ☐ c sport ☐ d cooking

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

Copper - mineral resources - non-renewable - save

Minerals are precious materials that we find underground. Gold, diamond, copper, and iron are all ① Each one is special. Gold is soft and shiny, perfect for jewelry. ② is great for wires. Iron is strong and used to make cars and ships. Metals and minerals are ③, so we must use them wisely.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة :

Copper is a strong metal which we use for electrical wires, pipes, and tools. It's cheaper than gold. Egypt gets most of its copper and gold from the Eastern Desert.

Iron is super strong. It helps make cars, ships, airplanes, and bridges. It's found in many places in Egypt.

To get minerals, miners dig deep into the ground. But minerals are non-renewable they take millions of years to form! So we must use them wisely and never waste them.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Copper is used for wires, pipes, and

- a** jewelry **b** tools **c** coins **d** bridges

2. Iron is very strong and helps make cars and

- a** food **b** toys **c** ships **d** gold

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Where is iron found in Egypt?

4. Why should we use minerals wisely?

5. What does the underlined word "It" refer to?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make a sentence.

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة :

1. Gold - shiny - is - and - soft

2. pipes - copper - make - We - to - use

3. coins and jewelry - use - gold - for - People.

4. mineral - is - a rare - Diamond .

5. waste them - must - use them - wisely - We- and never.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. The orange tree is (tall) than the apple tree. SB
2. Copper is (valuable) than diamond. SB
3. Books are (good) than movies. SB
4. He is (bad) at math than his sister.
5. Ali is (tall) than Omar. SB
6. Winter is colder (then) summer. SB
7. Copper is (useful) than gold.
8. My new tablet is (good) than the old tablet. SB
9. She has (many) books than her brother. SB
10. Diamond is (valuable) than gold.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. egypt has copper and gold

2. i love shiny rings

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

Minerals

gold - copper

★ "Just Watch!"-a Story by the Little Digger

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



little digger	حفار صغير	cargo	شحنة / حمولة
thick	سميك / كثيف	path	ممر / مسار / طريق
load	يحمل / يشحن	give up	يستسلم

Other words كلمات أخرى

everyone	كل شخص	ship	سفينة
ocean	محيط	proud	فخور
mud	طين	finally	أخيراً
machines	ماكينات	carefully	بحذر
size	الحجم	shore	شاطئ
strength	القوة		

Adjectives صفات

huge	ضخم	popular	مشهور
ready	مستعد	heavy	ثقيل
amazed	مدهش	clear	واضح
little	صغير	small	صغير الحجم
grateful	ممتن		

Expressions, prepositions and phrases تعبيرات وحروف جر وعبارات

across the ocean	عبر المحيط	went wrong	حدث خطأ
get stuck	يعلق / ينحسر	help others	يساعد الآخرين
looked at	نظر إلي	try to	يحاول أن
close to	قريب من	get close	يقترّب
on the shore	على الشاطئ	pull out	يجر / يسحب

Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع	
stare	يحملق
laugh	يضحك
admire	يعجب
sail	يبحر
bother	يضايق
load	يحمل
rush	يندفع
pull	يسحب - يجر
float	يطفو

Past ماض

stared
laughed
admired
sailed
bothered
loaded
rushed
pulled
floated

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	
get	يحصل
give up	يقلع / يستسلم
see	يري
give up	يستسلم
say	يقول
think	يعتقد
let	يسمح

Past ماض

got
gave up
saw
gave up
said
thought
let

Definitions

تعريفات

cargo	حمولة / شحنة	goods which are carried by a large ship	بضاعة تُشحن عبر سفينة
digger	حفار	a machine or tool used for digging	آلة تُستخدم للحفر
give up	يستسلم	to stop trying	التوقف عن المحاولة
path	مسار / طريق	a route or way for traveling	طريق أو ممر للتنقل
thick	سميك	something that is not thin	شيء غير رقيق / كثيف
load	يُحمل	to put things onto ships	وضع الأشياء على السفن

Study the following

- 1 Everyone admired the big ship. - الجميع أعجب بالسفينة الكبيرة.
- 2 The ship got stuck in thick mud. - علقَت السفينة في طين كثيف.
- 3 Big machines tried to help but failed. - حاولت الآلات الكبيرة المساعدة لكنها فشلت.
- 4 Everyone started to give up. - بدأ الجميع يستسلمون.
- 5 The big machines laughed at me. - ضحكت الآلات الكبيرة عليّ.
- 6 I worked hard to dig around the ship. - عملت بجِد لآحفر حول السفينة.

7 Finally, the path became clear.

8 The big ship floated free!

9 Size doesn't matter.

10 What matters is using your strength to help others.

- أخيراً، أصبح الطريق خالي من العوائق.

- طفت السفينة الكبيرة بحرية!

- الحجم لا يهم.

- ما يهم هو استخدام قوتك لمساعدة الآخرين.

Read the text

اقرأ النص:

استمع إلى النص:



Everyone admired the big ship. It was huge, and proud as it sailed across the ocean. I was just a little digger on the shore-not big, not popular-but always ready to help.

أعجب الجميع بالسفينة الكبيرة. كانت ضخمة وفخورة وهي تبهر عبر المحيط. كنت مجرد حفار صغير على الشاطئ - لست كبيراً ولا مشهوراً - لكنني دائماً مستعد للمساعدة.

One morning, I watched the big ship come close to shore to load some cargo. But then, something went wrong. It got too close and got stuck in the thick, heavy mud.

في صباح أحد الأيام، شاهدت السفينة الكبيرة تقترب من الشاطئ لتحميل بعض البضائع. لكن حدث شيء خاطئ. اقتربت كثيراً وعلقت في الطين الكثيف الغزير.

The ship tried and tried to move, but it couldn't. Other big machines rushed to help, but none of them could pull it out. Then I saw everyone starting to give up. "I can help!" I said.

حاولت السفينة مراراً وتكراراً أن تتحرك، لكنها لم تستطع. اندفعت آلات كبيرة أخرى للمساعدة، لكن لم يستطع أي منها إخراجها. ثم رأيت الجميع يبدأون في الاستسلام. قلت: "أنا أستطيع المساعدة!"

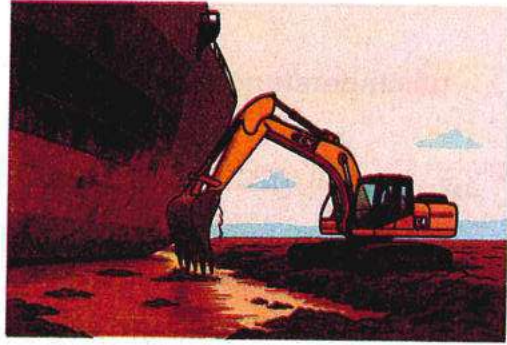
The big machines stared at me and laughed. "You? You're so small!" But I didn't let that bother me. I smiled and said, "Just watch!"

حدقت الآلات الكبيرة بي وضحكت: "أنت؟ أنت صغير جداً!" لكنني لم أسمح لذلك أن يزعجني. ابتسمت وقلت: "فقط شاهدوا!" I got to work right away, digging carefully around the ship and clearing the mud. It took a long time, but I didn't stop. Finally, the path was clear, and the big ship floated free!

بدأت العمل فوراً، أحفر حول السفينة بحذر وأزيل الطين. استغرق الأمر وقتاً طويلاً، لكنني لم أتوقف. أخيراً، أصبح الطريق خالي من العوائق، وطفّت السفينة الكبيرة بحرية!

The ship looked at me, amazed. "Thank you, little digger! I didn't think someone so small could help me." I smiled again and said, "Size doesn't matter. What matters is using your strength to help others."

نظرت إلي السفينة بدهشة. قالت: "شكراً لك أيها الحفار الصغير! لم أكن أعتقد أن شخصاً صغيراً يمكنه مساعدتي." ابتسمت مرة أخرى وقلت: "الحجم لا يهم. ما يهم هو استخدام قوتك لمساعدة الآخرين."



Pronunciation

❶ ما هي البادئة (Prefix) ؟

البادئة هي مجموعة من الحروف تُضاف في بداية الكلمة (قبلها) لتغيير معناها.

أمثلة على البادئات ومعانيها :

البادئة **"dis-"** تعني "ليس" أو "غير". مثل،

- **dislike** = لا يحب

- **disagree** = لا يوافق

البادئة **"bi-"** تعني "اثنان" أو "مرتين". مثل،

- **bicycle** = دراجة ذات عجلتين

- **biweekly** = مرتين في الأسبوع

البادئة **"mis-"** تعني "بطريقة خاطئة" أو "سوء". مثل،

- **misunderstand** = يسيء الفهم

- **misbehave** = يتصرف بشكل خاطئ

قواعد نطق الكلمات مع البادئة :

إذا كانت الكلمة الأساسية (التي تضيف إليها البادئة) مكونة من مقطع صوتي واحد (مقطع واحد فقط)، يكون التشديد على الكلمة الأساسية. مثال،

- **dislike** (dis-LIKE) - التشديد على **"like"**

إذا كانت الكلمة الأساسية مكونة من مقطعين صوتيين أو أكثر، غالباً يكون التشديد على البادئة. مثال،

- **disagree** (DIS-a-gree) - التشديد **"dis"**

➡ Listen, repeat, and underline the stressed syllable in the words in bold:

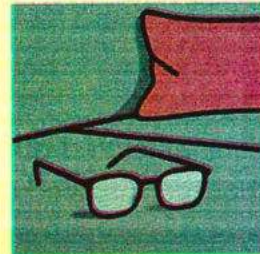
استمع وردد وضع خط تحت المقطع الصوتي المشدد في الكلمات المكتوبة بخط ثقیل

1

necessary

I always **misspell** the word "necessary"

2



I often **misplace** my glasses.

3



I rode my **bicycle** to the park yesterday.

4



He **dislikes** playing football.

Activities

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة :

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

- The big ship came to the shore to load some
☐ a water ☐ b cargo ☐ c fish ☐ d sand
- The ship got stuck in the thick
☐ a dust ☐ b water ☐ c mud ☐ d grass
- The little digger worked hard to the mud.
☐ a feed ☐ b clear ☐ c save ☐ d load
- The ship thanked the little digger for the
☐ a help ☐ b food ☐ c ride ☐ d tools

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة :

- When you stop trying to do something, you
☐ a help ☐ b give up ☐ c play ☐ d eat
- A machine that digs in the ground is called a
☐ a driver ☐ b loader ☐ c digger ☐ d walker
- Goods carried by a ship are called
☐ a path ☐ b cargo ☐ c load ☐ d mud
- When you put things onto a ship or truck, you them.
☐ a dig ☐ b float ☐ c load ☐ d stop
- Something that is not thin is
☐ a light ☐ b tall ☐ c thick ☐ d soft
- A way or route people walk on is called a
☐ a path ☐ b digger ☐ c road ☐ d box
- A is used to dig in the ground
☐ a painter ☐ b digger ☐ c teacher ☐ d baker

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار.

thick - cargo - digger - swim

Omar was standing near the sea, watching a big ship. The ship came close to the shore to take some ① But it went too far and got stuck in the ② mud. Big machines tried to help, but only one small ③ was able to dig around the ship and free it.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Ahmed and Sara were walking along the beach when they saw a huge ship coming closer to the shore. The ship was carrying a lot of cargo that needed to be unloaded. Suddenly, the ship got stuck in the thick mud near the shore. Many big machines tried to pull the ship out, but none of them succeeded. Then, a small digger started digging carefully around the ship. After a long time, the digger cleared a path, and the ship was able to float free. Ahmed and Sara learned that even small help can make a big difference.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Ahmed and Sara saw a big ship carrying
☐ a machines ☐ b cargo ☐ c diggers ☐ d mud
- The ship got stuck in the mud near the shore.
☐ a thin ☐ b thick ☐ c soft ☐ d dry

B. Answer the following questions:

- What did the big machines do?
- Who helped the ship when it got stuck?
- What did Ahmed and Sara learn from what happened?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make a sentence.

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

- me - and - The big machines - laughed - stared at.
- digger- the - The little - big - ship - helped.
- the - big - Everyone - ship - admired.
- in - thick - The ship - mud- got stuck.
- give up - started to - Everyone.
- ship - free - The big - floated.

Lessons 4&5

★ Writing Who Am I?

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



tear
wild
bathe

دمعة
جامع / نائر
يستحم

sweat
destroy

يعرق
يدمر

Other words كلمات أخرى

water
river
rain
hurt
animals
life
glass
still

مياه
نهر
مطر
مصاب / مؤلم
حيوانات
حياة
زجاج
ساكن / ثابت

lakes
cloud
people
plants
oceans
without
shape
percentage

بحيرات
سحابة
ناس
نباتات
محيطات
بدون
شكل
نسبة مئوية

Expressions, prepositions and phrases تعبيرات وحروف جر وعبارات

stop moving
grow things
fall too hard

يتوقف عن الحركة
تنمو الأشياء
يسقط بقوة

shape the world
be quiet

يشكل العالم
يكون هادئ

Conjugation of verbs تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

bathe يستحم
cry يبكي
search يبحث
sweat يعرق
destroy يدمر
dance يرقص
cool يبرد
crash يصطدم

Past ماضٍ

bathed
cried
searched
sweated
destroyed
danced
cooled
crashed

Present مضارع

sleep ينام
drink يشرب
fall يقع / يسقط
freeze يتجمد

Past ماضٍ

slept
drank
fell
froze

Study the following

1 You might see me in a glass, a river, a cloud, or a tear.

قد تراني في كوب، أو نهر، أو سحابة، أو دمعة.

2 I can be quiet and still, or wild and crashing.

يمكن أن أكون هادئًا وساكنًا، أو هائجًا وعنيفًا.

3 I sleep in lakes and dance in the rain.

أنام في البحيرات وأرقص في المطر.

4 People drink me when they're thirsty.

يشربني الناس عندما يكونون عطشى.

5 They bathe in me when they're dirty.

ويستحمون بي عندما يكونون متسخين.

6 They cry me when they're hurt.

ويبكونني عندما يتألمون.

7 Plants need me to grow.

النباتات تحتاجني لتنمو.

8 Animals search for me every day.

الحيوانات تبحث عني كل يوم.

9 I clean things, cool things, and help plants grow.

أُنظف الأشياء، وأبردها، وأساعد النباتات على النمو.

10 I flood towns, I freeze roads, and I fall too hard.

أُغرق المدن، أُجمّد الطرق، وأتساقط بقوة.

11 I am always part of something bigger.

أنا دائمًا جزء من شيء أكبر.

12 I can be in clouds, oceans, or even sweat.

يمكن أن أكون في السحاب، أو المحيطات، أو حتى العرق.

13 I have no shape, but I can shape the world.

ليس لي شكل، لكنني أستطيع تشكيل العالم.

Read text .

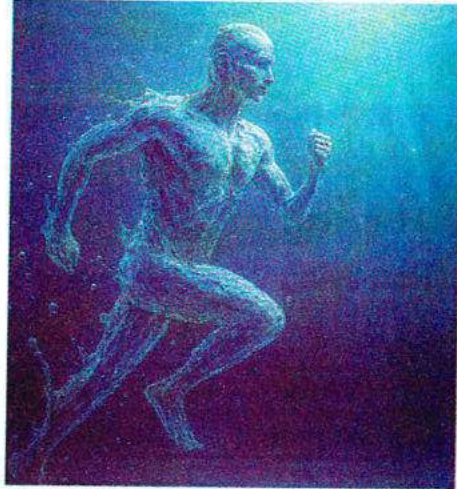
أقرأ النص :

استمع إلى النص :



I Am Water أنا الماء

I am water. You might see me in a glass, a river, a **cloud**⁽¹⁾, or a tear. I can be quiet and still, or wild and crashing. I sleep in lakes and **dance**⁽²⁾ in the rain. People drink me when they're **thirsty**⁽³⁾, bathe in me when they're **dirty**⁽⁴⁾ and cry me when they're hurt. Plants need me, animals **search for**⁽⁵⁾ me, and without me-life would stop. Sometimes, I help. I clean. I cool. I grow things. Sometimes, I **destroy**⁽⁶⁾. I flood. I freeze. I fall too hard. But I never stop moving.



I am always part of something greater-clouds, **oceans**⁽⁷⁾, even sweat. I am water. I have no shape, but I can **shape**⁽⁸⁾ the world.

Arabic Meaning

أنا الماء. قد تراني في كوب، أو نهر، أو سحابة، أو دمعة. يمكن أن أكون هادئاً وساكناً، أو هائجاً ومندفعاً. أنام في البحيرات وأرقص في المطر. يشربني الناس عندما يكونون عطشى، ويستحمون بي عندما يكونون متسخين، ويكفونني عندما يتألمون. النباتات تحتاجني، والحيوانات تبحث عني، ويدوي تتوقف الحياة. أحياناً، أساعد. أنظف. أبرد. أجعل الأشياء تنمو. وأحياناً، أدمر. اسبب فيضان. أجمد. اتساقط بقوة. لكنني لا أتوقف عن الحركة. أنا دائماً جزء من شيء أعظم - السحاب، المحيطات، وحتى العرق. أنا الماء. ليس لي شكل، لكن يمكنني تشكيل العالم.

- ١- سحابة
- ٢- يرقص
- ٣- عطشان
- ٤- متسخ
- ٥- يبحث عن
- ٦- يدمر
- ٧- محيطات
- ٨- يشكل

Learn!

Writing Object-Perspective Narratives

كتابة قصص من منظور الجُمادات

A Fiction story is a made-up story created from the imagination, not based on real things that happened.

هذا النوع من الكتابة هو أسلوب ممتع يُستخدم فيه "ضمير المتكلم" (First Person) لتجسيد شيء غير حي (مثل الماء أو النحاس أو الزيت) وكأنه يتحدث عن نفسه. الهدف من هذا التمرين هو تطوير الخيال وتحسين مهارات الوصف لدى الطلاب.

الخطوات المطلوبة:

1. First Person: "I", "me", "my" (استخدم ضمير المتكلم)

اكتب وكأنك الشيء نفسه، تتكلم عن نفسك. مثال:

- I am water.

- My drops fall from the sky. (أنا الماء - قطراتي تسقط من السماء).

2. Non-living thing: ما أنت؟ (اختر شيئاً غير حي): فُكر في شيء غير حي سيتحدث.

أمثلة:

Water (الماء)	Copper (النحاس)	Oil (الزيت)
A pencil (قلم رصاص)	A shoe (حذاء)	

3. Description: استخدم الحواس الخمس والصفات

صف نفسك باستخدام الحواس:

كيف تبدو؟ (البصر) كيف تشعر؟ (اللمس) هل تصدر صوتاً؟ (السمع)

هل لك طعم؟ (التذوق) هل لك رائحة؟ (الشم)

استخدم الصفات (Adjectives) لوصف الشكل أو الإحساس مثل:

cold (بارد)	smooth (ناعم)	shiny (لامع)
noisy (صاخب)	strong (قوي)	

4. Ending: لماذا أنت مهم؟

اختم النص بشرح لماذا أنت (كشيء) مهم في حياة الناس أو في الطبيعة. مثال

- Without me, life would not exist. (بدوني، لن توجد الحياة).

لماذا هذا التمرين مفيد؟ لأن هذا النوع من الكتابة، يُعَلِّم الطالب كيف يستخدم الضمير الأول
يُنمي الخيال الإبداعي، يُساعده على فهم قيمة الأشياء من حوله بطريقة ممتعة

Example:

I Am Gold

I sleep deep under the earth, hidden and quiet. People search for me, dream about me, and admire me. I sit in the crowns of kings and the rings of queens. I am soft and beautiful. I am treasured because I am valuable. I am gold

Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. Water can be in rivers, lakes, or
☐ a cars ☐ b clouds ☐ c shoes ☐ d doors
2. People water when they are thirsty.
☐ a drink ☐ b eat ☐ c wash ☐ d plant
3. Sometimes water floods or
☐ a grows ☐ b freezes ☐ c flies ☐ d cooks
4. Without water, there would be no
☐ a games ☐ b life ☐ c food ☐ d road

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The waves will against the rocks in a storm.
☐ a crash ☐ b shape ☐ c destroy ☐ d drink
2. A ball has a round
☐ a destroy ☐ b shape ☐ c flood ☐ d freeze
3. Strong winds can small houses.
☐ a shape ☐ b play ☐ c destroy ☐ d float
4. People drink when they are thirsty.
☐ a lake ☐ b water ☐ c sea ☐ d book
5. Without water life will
☐ a shape ☐ b hurt ☐ c stop ☐ d fall
6. I when I am dirty.
☐ a shape ☐ b world ☐ c flood ☐ d bathe

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

earth - valuable - admire - gold

I sleep deep under the earth, hidden and quiet. People search for me, dream about me, and ① me. I sit in the crowns of kings and the rings of queens. I am soft and beautiful. I am treasured because I am ② I am ③

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make a sentence.

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة :

1. water - need - Plants - grow - to.

2. drink me - thirsty - when - they're - People

3. search for - water - Animals - every day.

4. I can shape - I - have - no shape, - but - the world.

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي :

1. people drink me when they're thirsty

2. can you shape the world

6 Write a paragraph of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding words:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن :

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

Water in our life

drink - plants

Review



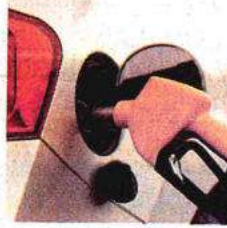
on Unit 5

Key vocabulary



sunlight

أشعة الشمس / ضوء الشمس



fossil fuel

وقود حفري



water

ماء



soil

تربة



minerals

معادن



wind

رياح

nature

الطبيعة

natural gas

غاز طبيعي

cotton

قطن

electricity

الكهرباء

mineral resources

الموارد المعدنية

gold

ذهب

diamond

الالماس

copper

نحاس

iron

حديد

natural resources

مصادر طبيعية

fertile land

ارض خصبة

electrical wires

أسلاك كهربائية

pipes

أنابيب

tools

أدوات

miners

عمال مناجم

non-renewable

غير متجددة

little digger

حفار صغير

thick

سميك / كثيف

Unit 5 Our World, Our Resources

coins	عملات معدنية	load	يحمل / يشحن
jewelry	مجوهرات	tear	دمعة
rare mineral	معدن نادر	wild	جامح / نائر
cargo	شحنة / حمولة	sweat	يعرق
path	ممر / مسار / طريق	bathe	يستحم
give up	يستسلم	destroy	يدمر

Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع	
provide	يمد / زود
name	يذكر / يسمي
waste	يضيع
save	ينقذ
stare	يحملق
laugh	يضحك
admire	يعجب
sail	يسبح
bother	يضايق
load	يحمل
rush	يندفع
pull	يسحب - يجز
float	يطفو
bathe	يستحم
destroy	يدمر

Past ماض

provided
named
wasted
saved
stared
laughed
admired
sailed
bothered
loaded
rushed
pulled
floated
bathed
destroyed

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	
know	يعرف
find	يجد
grow	يزرع / ينمو
take	يأخذ
dig	يحفر
give up	يقنع / يستسلم
think	يعتقد
let	يسمح
sleep	ينام
drink	يشرب
fall	يقع / يسقط
freeze	يتجمد

Past ماض

knew
found
grew
took
dug
gave up
thought
let
slept
drank
fell
froze

Language notes

ملاحظات لغوية

Comparative Adjectives مقارنة الصفات

تُستخدم صفات المقارنة لمقارنة شخصين أو حيوانين أو غير ذلك.

تنقسم الصفات إلى صفات قصيرة **Short adjectives** وصفات طويلة **Long adjectives**

Short adjectives الصفات القصيرة

تتكون أغلب الصفات القصيرة من مقطع صوتي واحد وهناك بعضها يتكون من مقطعين .

Short adjectives = one syllable (مقطع واحد)

Ex: tall big small fast slow cold hot

Form صيغة المقارنة

شخص / شئ + adjective + er + than شخص / شئ

Ex: Gold is cheaper than diamond.

Spelling Rules:

لاحظ الآتي:

الصفات التي تنتهي بحرف (y)، نغير (y) إلى (i) ثم نضيف (-er).

heavy → heavier happy → happier

Ex: Amira is happier than Mohamed.

إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف e نضيف إليها r فقط

nice → nicer large → larger

بعض الصفات نضاعف بها الحرف الأخير عند إضافة er

fat → fatter thin → thinner big → bigger

مثال: هذا الاختبار أفضل من الاختبار السابق.

Long adjectives ثانيا الصفات الطويلة

Ex: beautiful – expensive – dangerous – comfortable

Form: التكوين

شخص / شئ + more/less + adjective + than شخص / شئ

مع الصفات الطويلة (التي تتكون من مقطعين أو أكثر)، نستخدم "more" أو "less" قبل الصفة، و "than" بعدها.

Ex: Diamond is more valuable than gold. (الألماس أكثر قيمة من الذهب).



Answers to Paragraphs

1

Lesson 1

Natural Resources in Egypt

Egypt has many natural resources like the Nile River, oil, and natural gas. The Nile gives us water for farming and drinking. We also grow cotton, wheat, and fruits. Minerals like gold and iron help build our country.

2

Lesson 2

Minerals

We find minerals like gold, copper, and iron under the earth. Gold is used for jewelry, and copper is used for wires and tools. Iron helps build cars and bridges. Minerals are non-renewable, so we must use them wisely.

3

Lessons 4&5

Water in our life

Water is in rivers, clouds, and even tears. People, animals, and plants need it to live. Water helps, cleans, and grows things, but it can also flood and freeze. It never stops moving and can shape the world.

4

Test

Minerals

Many things we use every day come from under the ground. Gold and copper are shiny metals. Iron is very strong. People find these minerals in the desert. We must use them carefully because they are non-renewable and take many years to form.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

استمع وأختَر:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. The children saw flying near the river.
 a birds b planes c balloons
2. They painted the old
 a cars b benches c walls
3. The museum had big whale
 a bones b toys c boats

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog:

اقرأ وأكمل:

gold - minerals - jewelry - soft

- Adam : What do you know about _____?
- Mona : Minerals are things like _____, diamond, copper, and iron.
- Adam : Gold is _____ and shiny.
- Mona : What is it used for?
- Adam : We used it to make _____.

C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read the text and answer questions:

اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة:

Last weekend, we went to Khan El Khalili. It was busy and full of beautiful shops. I bought a small drum and listened to traditional music. Then we visited the museum to learn about old Egypt. I liked the old coins and pictures.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. Where did the writer go?

2. What did the writer like in the museum?

Unit 5 Our World, Our Resources

B: Choose the correct answer:

3. The place was
a empty **b** quiet **c** busy **d** dirty
4. He bought a
a flute **b** drum **c** book **d** doll
5. They visited the after the market.
a school **b** shop **c** house **d** museum

D- Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة :

1. The flower needs water and to grow.
a music **b** sunlight **c** sand **d** snow
2. is a strong metal.
a Copper **b** Plant **c** Coffee **d** Water
3. The small worked hard to help the big ship.
a driver **b** cook **c** dancer **d** digger
4. Diamond is a rare
a car **b** paper **c** mineral **d** book
5. My brother is than me in football.
a good **b** bad **c** better **d** slow

E- Writing

5 Rearrange the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة :

1. daily lives - resources - help- us - in - Natural - our.

2. grow cotton,- many kinds - We - wheat, - and - of fruit.

3. thick - mud - The ship - got - stuck in.

4. big - ship - The - free - floated.

5. need - to grow - Plants - water.

Test on Unit 5

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

استمع وأختَر:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



- Gold and are shiny metals.
☐ a iron ☐ b copper ☐ c water ☐ d rock
- Iron is very
☐ a strong ☐ b cheap ☐ c soft ☐ d clear
- We find these minerals in the
☐ a river ☐ b desert ☐ c forest ☐ d mountain
- These minerals are, so we must not waste them.
☐ a light ☐ b old ☐ c soft ☐ d non-renewable

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- Plants need water to
☐ a play ☐ b dance ☐ c grow ☐ d freeze
- A is a route or way for traveling.
☐ a digger ☐ b path ☐ c bath ☐ d ship
- Egypt's land along the Nile is, so we can grow food.
☐ a fertile ☐ b poor ☐ c dry ☐ d wise

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

strong - Egypt - copper - river

Copper is a strong metal which we use for electrical wires, pipes, and tools. It's cheaper than gold. Egypt gets most of its copper and gold from the Eastern Desert. Iron is super ① It helps make cars, ships, airplanes, and bridges. It's found in many places in ② To get ③, miners dig deep into the ground.

4 Read the text and answer questions:

اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة:

Once, there was a very big old tree in a hot, dry land. It had lived for many years. Its trunk was **wide** and it had many green branches. It was famous because it was the only tree where it lived and it gave shelter and rest to hundreds of travelers as they moved across the country. One day two travelers, who were new to the area, were walking across the field and saw the tree. It was very hot, dry day and one of them said, "Let's stop under that tree, where there is some shade."

Unit 5 Our World, Our Resources

A: Choose the correct answer:

1. The underlined word "**wide**" means.....
a big **b** small **c** short **d** old
2. There was a very big old in a hot, dry land
a lake **b** tree **c** planet **d** river

B: Answer the following questions:

3. How was the weather?
4. Why was the tree useful and famous for the travelers?
5. What is the best title for this passage?

5 Rearrange the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. digger - The - helped - ship - the big
2. grow - Plants - to - need - sunlight

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. The orange tree is taller (**then**) the apple tree.
2. Books are (**expensive**) than pens.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. what is under the ground
2. i like copper and gold

8 Write a paragraph of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding words:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Minerals

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

gold - copper

Unit 6



The Talking Earth الأرض الناطقة

Learning Outcomes

Speaking: _____

- Ask and answer questions about the story.

يسأل الطالب أسئلة عن القصة ويجيب عنها.

Reading: _____

- Answer comprehension questions about the story.

يجيب الطالب عن أسئلة فهم عن القصة.

- Analyze the elements of the story.

يحلل الطالب عناصر القصة.

- Answer critical thinking questions about the story.

يجيب الطالب على أسئلة التفكير النقدي عن القصة.

Writing: _____

- Rewrite the story from the heroine's perspective, demonstrating comprehension, and creative narrative skills

يعيد الطالب كتابة القصة من وجهة نظر البطلة، مع إظهار الفهم ومهارات السرد الإبداعي.

Characters of the story

شخصيات القصة



استمع إلى المفردات:



Billie Wind

بيلي ويند



Billie's family

عائلة بيلي



The elders

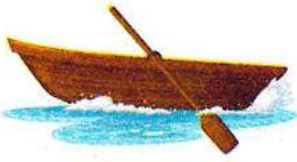
الشيوخ / كبار السن

Story Vocabulary

استمع إلى المضردات:



Picture Dictionary



canoe

قارب صغير خشبي / زورق



The Earth

الكرة الأرضية



Everglades

إيفرغلادز (اسم مكان)



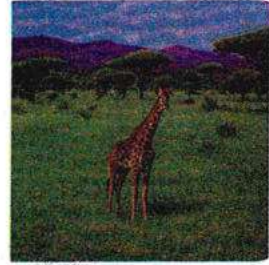
alligator

تمساح



owl

بومة



National Park

حديقة وطنية



shell

صدفة



scientist

عالم



splash

يرش



swamp

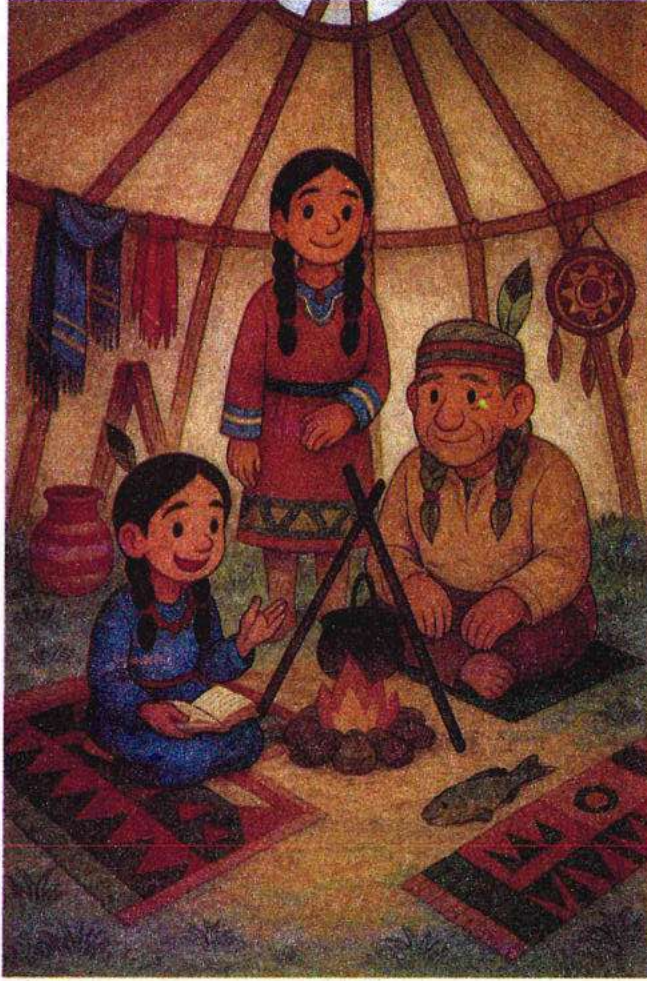
مستنقع

Definitions

تعريفات

native	مواطن أصلي	the first person who lived in a place	أول شخص عاش في مكان ما
tribe	قبيلة	a group of people who live together and share the same language, culture, and history	مجموعة من الناس يعيشون معاً ويشتركون في اللغة والثقافة والتاريخ.
elders	شيوخ / كبار السن	older people who are wise and respected	كبار السن الحكماء والمحترمون.
shelter	ملجأ	a safe place that protects someone from bad weather or danger	مكان آمن يحمي شخصاً من سوء الأحوال الجوية أو الخطر
survive	يبقى على قيد الحياة	to stay alive, especially in dangerous situations	يبقى حياً خصوصاً في مواقف خطيرة.
attack	هجوم	to try to hurt someone.	محاولة إيذاء شخص ما.
struggle	كفاح / صراع	to have a hard time doing something	مواجهة صعوبة في فعل شيء.
wisdom	حكمة	using what you know to make good choices.	استخدام ما تعرفه لاتخاذ خيارات جيدة.
disappointed	محبط / خائب الأمل	feeling sad because something didn't happen as expected.	الشعور بالحزن لأن شيئاً لم يحدث كما هو متوقع.
hoot	صوت البومة	the sound an owl makes	الصوت الذي تصدره البومة.
the wild	البرية	a place in nature where animals and plants live freely	مكان في الطبيعة يعيش فيه الحيوانات والنباتات بحرية
pack	يحزم - يجهز الحقائب	put things together to carry or take with you.	وضع الأشياء معاً لحملها أو أخذها معك.
swamp	مستنقع	wet, muddy area of land that has a lot of water, trees, and plants	منطقة رطبة وموحلة من الأرض تحتوى على الكثير من الماء والأشجار والنباتات

1

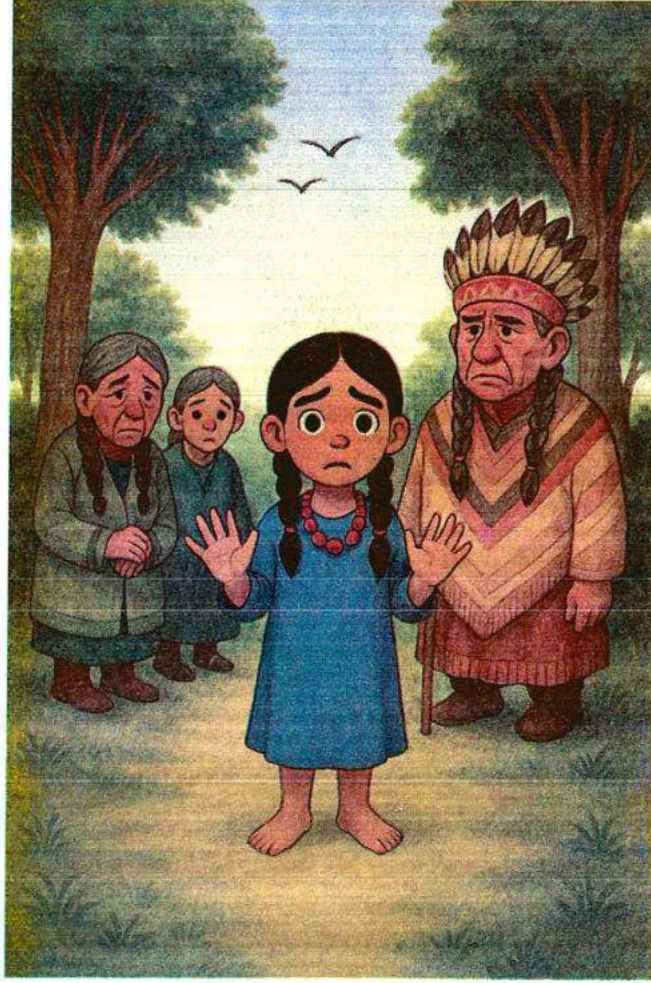


Billie Wind was a young Native American girl who lived in Florida. She loved science and **dreamed**⁽¹⁾ of becoming a scientist when she **grew up**⁽²⁾. But her family **believed**⁽³⁾ that the Earth could "talk" and share wisdom with those who listened to it. They said the wind, the water, and the animals all had something to teach. Billie did not believe this. She **thought**⁽⁴⁾ these were **just**⁽⁵⁾ old stories with no real meaning.

"بيلي ويند" كانت فتاة أمريكية من السكان الأصليين وكانت تعيش في فلوريدا، كانت تحب العلوم وتحلم بأن تصبح عالمة عندما تكبر. لكن عائلتها كانت تعتقد أن الأرض تستطيع "التحدث" ومشاركة الحكمة مع أولئك الذين يستمعون إليها، قالوا إن الرياح والمياه والحيوانات كلها لديها شيء لتعلمه. بيلي لم تصدق هذا. كانت تعتقد أن هذه مجرد قصص قديمة بلا معنى حقيقي.

1- dreamed	حلمت	2- grew up	كبرت	3- believed	اعتقدت
4- thought	اعتقدت	5- just	مجرد		

2



One day, Billie Wind told the elders of her tribe that she did not believe that the Earth could talk. The elders were **disappointed**⁽¹⁾. They told Billie that if she did not believe what they said, then she should go into the Everglades National Park **alone**⁽²⁾ and listen to the Earth. Only then would she understand. Billie did not want to go, but she had no **choice**⁽³⁾. She packed her canoe and went into the Everglades, not **sure**⁽⁴⁾ what she might find.

ذات يوم، أخبرت بيلي ويند شيوخ قبيلتها أنها لا تصدق أن الأرض يمكن أن تتحدث. شعر الشيوخ بخيبة أمل. أخبروا بيلي أنه إذا لم تصدق ما قالوه، فعليها أن تذهب إلى حديقة إيفرغلادز الوطنية وحدها وتستمع إلى الأرض، عندها فقط ستفهم. لم ترغب بيلي في الذهاب، لكن لم يكن لديها خيار آخر. قامت بتجهيز زورقها وذهبت إلى إيفرغلادز، وكانت غير متأكدة مما قد تجده.

1- disappointed	2- alone	3- choice	اختيار
خائبة الأمل	4- sure	متأكد	

3



At first, Billie **struggled**⁽¹⁾ to survive in the Everglades. She had no shelter, no food, and no one to help her. The swamp was full of **strange**⁽²⁾ sounds, and she felt **afraid**⁽³⁾. At night, she heard **alligators splashing**⁽⁴⁾ in the water and owls hooting in the trees. She **wished**⁽⁵⁾ she was back home, safe and warm. But **slowly**⁽⁶⁾, she started to **pay attention**⁽⁷⁾ to the world around her.

في البداية، كافحت بيلي من أجل البقاء في إيفرغلادز، لم يكن لديها مأوى ولا طعام، ولا أحد يساعدها. كان المستنقع مليئاً بأصوات غريبة، شعرت بالخوف في الليل، سمعت التماسيح تتسبب في طرطشة للماء واليوم يصيح في الأشجار. تمنيت لو عادت إلى منزلها، آمنة وشاعرة بالدفع. ولكن ببطء، بدأت تولي اهتماماً للعالم من حولها.

1- struggled	كافحت	2- strange	غريب	3- afraid	خائف
4- alligators splashing	تماسيح تطرطش الماء	5- wished	يتمنى	6- slowly	ببطء
		7- pay attention	تعطي اهتماماً		

4



She watched the animals **closely**⁽¹⁾ and saw how they survived. The alligators waited **patiently**⁽²⁾ for their food **instead of**⁽³⁾ wasting energy. The turtles hid in their shells when danger was near. The birds **warned**⁽⁴⁾ each other when an animal came to attack. Billie **realized**⁽⁵⁾ that nature had its own way of teaching. She learned how to catch fish, **make a fire**⁽⁶⁾, and find **shelter**⁽⁷⁾, just like the animals did.

لقد راقبت الحيوانات عن قرب ورات كيف نجت . انتظرت التماسيح بصبر طعماها بدلا من إهدار الطاقة. اختبأت السلاحف في أصدافها عندما كان الخطر قريبا. حذرت الطيور بعضها بعضا عندما اقترب حيوان للهجوم. أدركت بيلي أن الطبيعة لها طريقته الخاصة في التعليم. تعلمت كيف تصطاد السمك، وتشعل النار، وتجد مأوى، تماقا مثلما فعلت الحيوانات.

1- closely	عن قرب	2- patiently	بصبر	3- instead of	بدلا من
4- warned	حذرت	5- realized	أدركت	6- make a fire	تشعل النار
		7- shelter	مأوى		

5



After many days in the wild, Billie Wind was no **longer**⁽¹⁾ afraid. She learned how to survive, but more **importantly**⁽²⁾, she learned how to listen. The Earth did talk, not with words, but **through**⁽³⁾ the sounds of the wind, the **movements**⁽⁴⁾ of animals, and the **changes**⁽⁵⁾ in the land. Everything in nature was **connected**⁽⁶⁾, and if people did not take **care**⁽⁷⁾ of it, the **balance**⁽⁸⁾ would be **broken**⁽⁹⁾.

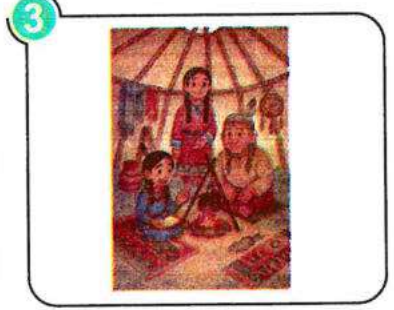
بعد عدة أيام في البرية، لم تعد بيلي ويند خائفة، لقد تعلمت كيف تنجو، ولكن الأهم من ذلك، تعلمت كيف تستمع. لقد تحدثت الأرض، ليس بالكلمات بل من خلال أصوات الرياح، وحركات الحيوانات، والتغيرات في الأرض. كل شيء في الطبيعة كان مترابطاً، وإذا لم يعتنِ الناس بها، فإن التوازن سيختل.

1- no longer	لم تعد	2- importantly	الأهم	3- through	خلال
4- movements	حركات	5- changes	تغييرات	6- connected	مترايط
7- take care	يعتني	8- balance	التوازن	9- broken	سيختل

★ Characters

1 Look, read, and match.

انظر واقرأ وصل:



a Billie's family

b The elders

c Billie Wind

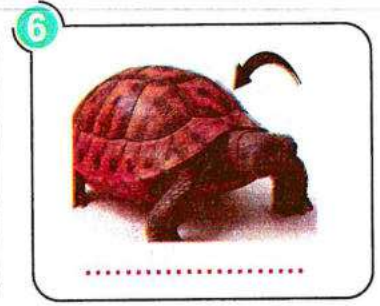
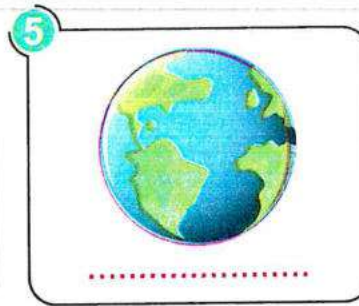
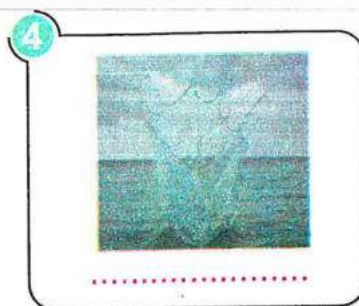
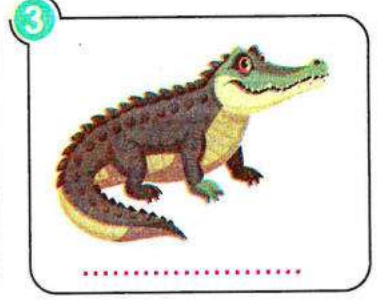
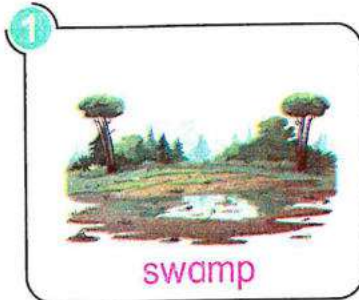
2 Read the descriptions. Then, write the correct character

اقرأ الوصف ثم اكتب الشخصية الصحيحة:

1. They believed that the Earth could talk and share wisdom. (Billie's family)
2. She learned how to catch fish, make a fire, and find shelter. (.....)
3. They told Billie to go into the Everglades National Park alone and listen to the Earth. (.....)

3 Look and write

انظر واكتب:



4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- Billie loved science and dreamed of becoming a when she grew up.
☐ a driver ☐ b scientist ☐ c firefighter ☐ d police officer
- Billie saw some hooting in the trees.
☐ a turtles ☐ b dogs ☐ c alligators ☐ d owls
- The turtles hid in their when danger was near.
☐ a seas ☐ b lakes ☐ c shells ☐ d plants
- Billie had no shelter in the Everglades, so she struggled to
☐ a survive ☐ b pack ☐ c teach ☐ d attack

5 Complete the summary of the story with these words:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات في القائمة:

hooting - ~~swamp~~ - shells

Billie packed her canoe to go into the Everglades. The ❶ swamp was full of strange sounds. At night, she heard alligators splashing in the water and owls ❷ in the trees. The turtles hid in their ❸ when danger was near. The birds warned each other when an animal came to attack. Billie realized that nature had its own way of teaching.

6 Read and write T (true) or F (false):

اقرأ واكتب صح أم خطأ:

- Billie Wind was a young Egyptian girl. (X)
- Billie dreamed of becoming a scientist. ()
- At first, Billie didn't believe that the Earth could talk. ()
- Billie heard hippos splashing in the water at night. ()
- Turtles hid in their shells when danger was near. ()
- Billie didn't learn anything at the end of her journey. ()

Unit 6 The Reader

7. Everything in nature was connected. ()

8. Billie went to the desert to listen to the Earth. ()

7 Answer questions about the story.

أجب أسئلة عن القصة:

1. Where did Billie Wind live?

Billie Wind lived in Florida.

2. How did Billie feel when she was alone in the Everglades?

3. What lesson did Billie learn from nature?

4. Why did the elders send Billie into the Everglades?

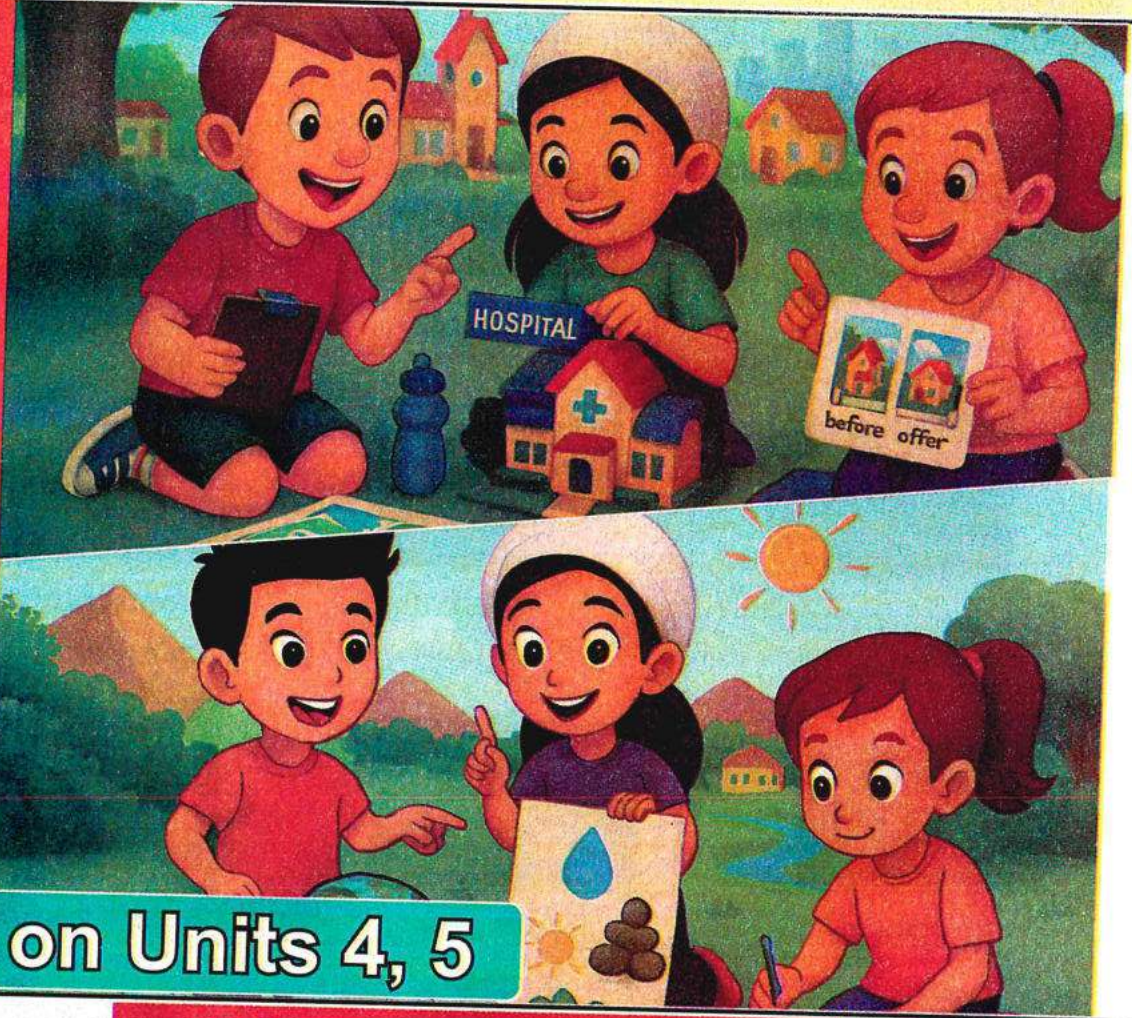
8 Read and complete the summary with the words in the box.

أكمل ملخص القصة بهذه الكلمات:

catch - ~~elders~~ - Earth - Everglades - alligators

Billie Wind was a young Native American girl who loved science. She did not believe that the Earth could "talk" like the ① elders said. To prove her wrong, they sent her to the ② alone. At first, Billie struggled, but she learned from the animals. She heard ③ splashing in the water. In the end, Billie realized that the ④ did talk in a different way. She learned how to ⑤ fish and make fire like the animals.

Review 2



on Units 4, 5

Objectives of Review 2

- To revise the vocabulary and language from Units 4 - 5.
- يراجع التلاميذ المفردات والقواعد اللغوية الموجودة بالوحدات من ٤ إلى ٥.
- To revise the key letter sounds from Units 4 - 5.
- يراجع التلاميذ الصوتيات من الوحدات ٤ إلى ٥.
- To evaluate progress in Units 4 -5.
- يتم تقييم مدى نجاح التلاميذ في استيعاب الوحدات من ٤ إلى ٥.

★ Units 4 - 5

Unit 4



restaurant

مطعم



coffee shop

مقهى



bakery

مخبز



supermarket

متجر



club

نادى رياضى



theme park

مدينة الملاهى / متنزه



village

قرية



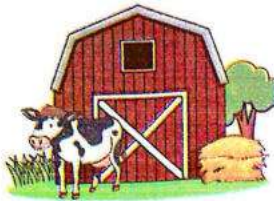
fields

حقول



main square

الساحة الرئيسية



barn

حظيرة (مزرعة)



community center

مركز مجتمعى



cottage

منزل ريفى / كوخ

community

مجتمع

neighborhood

حي سكني

reduce crowding

يقلل الازدحام

Iconic Tower

البرج الأيقوني

the New Administrative Capital

العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة

steel

فولاذ/ صلب

modern technology

التكنولوجيا الحديثة

building

مبنى

energy

طاقة

airport

مطار

green areas

مساحات خضراء

floor

طابق/ دور

comfortable

مريح

safe

آمن

Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

train	يتدرب
shop	يتسوق
enjoy	يستمتع بـ
celebrate	يحتفل
reduce	يقلل
design	يصمم
manage	يدير / يتحكم
locate	يحدد (موقع)

Past ماضٍ

trained
shopped
enjoyed
celebrated
reduced
designed
managed
located

Present مضارع

buy	يشترى
drink	يشرب
bring	يحضر
hear	يسمع
sing	يغنى
feed	يطعم
keep	يربى
sell	يبيع
spend	يقضى

Past ماضٍ

bought
drank
brought
heard
sang
fed
kept
sold
spent

Language in use

قواعد لغوية

Prepositions of time

At

نستخدم **at** مع أوقات اليوم **Times of Day** وأوقات الوجبات **mealtimes** والوقت **clock times** والعطلات **Holidays** / الاجازات

At	at 4 o'clock	at 10:30	at noon	at midnight
	at lunchtime	at dinner time	at Christmas	at Easter

In

نستخدم **in** مع أجزاء اليوم **Parts of the day** والشهور **Months** والفصول **Seasons** والسنوات **Years**

In	in the morning	in the afternoon	in the evening	in April
	in November	in the summer	in the spring	in 1992
	in 2025			

On

نستخدم **on** مع أيام الأسبوع **Days** والتواريخ **Dates** وأجزاء من يوم معين **Parts of specific day**

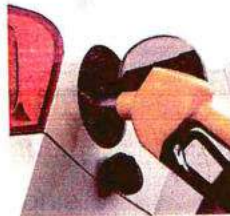
On	on Tuesday	on Saturday	on my birthday	on Christmas day
	on 15th June	on 1st August	on Monday morning	on Saturday evening
	on Friday night			

Key vocabulary



sunlight

أشعة الشمس / ضوء الشمس



fossil fuel

وقود حفري



water

ماء



soil

تربة



minerals

معادن



wind

رياح

nature	الطبيعة	natural resources	مصادر طبيعية
natural gas	غاز طبيعي	fertile land	ارض خصبة
cotton	قطن	electrical wires	أسلاك كهربائية
electricity	الكهرباء	pipes	أنابيب
mineral resources	الموارد المعدنية	tools	أدوات
gold	ذهب	miners	عمال مناجم
diamond	الالماس	non-renewable	غير متجددة
copper	نحاس	little digger	حفار صغير
iron	حديد	thick	سميك / كثيف

coins	عملات معدنية	load	يحمل / يشحن
jewelry	مجوهرات	tear	دمعة
rare mineral	معدن نادر	wild	جامح / نائر
cargo	شحنة / حمولة	sweat	يعرق
path	ممر / مسار / طريق	bathe	يستحم
give up	يستسلم	destroy	يدمر

Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماض	Present مضارع	Past ماض
provide يمد / زود	provided	know يعرف	knew
name يذكر / يسمي	named	find يجد	found
waste يضيع	wasted	grow يزرع / ينمو	grew
save ينقذ	saved	take يأخذ	took
stare يحملق	stared	dig يحفر	dug
laugh يضحك	laughed	give up يقلع / يستسلم	gave up
admire يعجب	admired	think يعتقد	thought
sail يبحر	sailed	let يسمح	let
bother يضايق	bothered	sleep ينام	slept
load يحمل	loaded	drink يشرب	drank
rush يندفع	rushed	fall يقع / يسقط	fell
pull يسحب - يجر	pulled	freeze يتجمد	froze
float يطفو	floated		
bathe يستحم	bathed		
destroy يدمر	destroyed		

Language notes

Comparative Adjectives مقارنة الصفات

تُستخدم صفات المقارنة لمقارنة شخصين أو شيئين أو حيوانين أو غير ذلك.

تنقسم الصفات إلى صفات قصيرة **Short adjectives** وصفات طويلة **Long adjectives**

✓ Short adjectives الصفات القصيرة

تتكون أغلب الصفات القصيرة من مقطع صوتي واحد وهناك بعضها يتكون من مقطعين .

Short adjectives = one syllable (مقطع واحد)

Ex: tall big small fast slow cold hot

✓ Form صيغة المقارنة

شخص / شيء + adjective + er + than شخص / شيء

Ex: Gold is cheaper than diamond.

✓ Spelling Rules:

⊙ لاحظ الاتي:

⊙ الصفات التي تنتهي بحرف (y)، نغير (y) إلى (i) ثم نضيف (-er) .

heavy → heavier

happy → happier

Ex: Amira is happier than Mohamed.

⊙ إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف e نضيف اليها r فقط

nice → nicer

large → larger

⊙ بعض الصفات نضاعف بها الحرف الأخير عند اضافة er

fat → fatter

thin → thinner

big → bigger

مثال: هذا الاختبار أفضل من الاختبار السابق.

✓ Long adjectives ثانيا الصفات الطويلة

Ex: beautiful – expensive – dangerous – comfortable

✓ Form: التكوين

شخص / شيء + more/less + adjective + than شخص / شيء

⊙ مع الصفات الطويلة (التي تتكون من مقطعين أو أكثر)، نستخدم "more" أو "less" قبل الصفة، و "than" بعدها.

Ex: Diamond is more valuable than gold. (الألماس أكثر قيمة من الذهب).

Test on Units 4&5

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. I have with my family in the morning.
☐ a dinner ☐ b lunch ☐ c breakfast ☐ d snack
2. I meet my at the club at lunchtime.
☐ a teacher ☐ b brother ☐ c friends ☐ d parents
3. We usually play at 5 p.m.
☐ a tennis ☐ b football ☐ c chess ☐ d music
4. I go to the beach in
☐ a December ☐ b April ☐ c January ☐ d July

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I live in a small with green fields and quiet hills.
☐ a city ☐ b school ☐ c village ☐ d forest
2. Every morning, I hear birds and see farmers working.
☐ a talking ☐ b running ☐ c singing ☐ d planting
3. My uncle keeps cows, sheep, and chickens in the
☐ a hospital ☐ b station ☐ c barn ☐ d shop

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

square - meeting - animals - air

Life in a village is peaceful and simple. People live in cozy cottages surrounded by green fields and fresh ① There is a market in the main ② where people buy and sell fresh fruit and vegetables. Farmers keep their ③ in barns. Children have fun at the community center.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

There are many exciting things to do in New Alamein. The city is on the beach so you can visit the cool sea when its hot. This beautiful beach is 14 kms long.

Review 2

There is also a large, green lake right in the middle of the city. You can also visit the beautiful International Park. If you want to learn about **fascinating** history of the area, then visit the Museum. There are some amazing treasures there. I can't wait to visit New Alamein.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The beach is 14..... long.
 a meters b kilometers c centimeters d kilograms
- The word "fascinating means.....
 a boring b ugly c useless d beautiful

B. Answer the following questions:

- Where can you go when its hot?
- What can you find in the Museum?
- What can you see in the middle of the city?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً،

- are- to - **Minerals** - jewelry - make - used.
- do - we - to - **What** - wires - make - electrical - use?

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس،

- I go to Alexandria (**on**) summer.
- Amr is (**tall**) than Hani.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- egypt builds new cities
- I travel to Aswan in February.

8 Write a paragraph of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Minerals

copper - tools

Listening Material

نصوص الاستماع الواردة في الكتاب



نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بأسئلة الاستماع
الواردة في وحدات كتاب

Bit Bit

Unit

1

Lesson (1)

The Nile River is very long. Many animals live near it. Small fish eat plants called water weeds. Birds eat small fish and insects. Big fish eat smaller fish and tiny creatures. Crocodiles eat fish, birds, and sometimes big animals. The Nile River is an important home for all these animals.

Lesson (2)

Many animals live in the desert. The desert is hot and dry. Snakes often eat rats. Camels eat plants to stay strong. Owls come out at night.

Lesson (3)

Ahmed and his sister Lalia went to the park yesterday. Ahmed sat under a big tree. He climbed the trunk and rested near the branches. He saw a small bird beside the stream. Big fish swam past swiftly. Laila smiled and drank from the stream.

Lesson (4)

Koshari is a famous Egyptian food. It is made of rice, lentils, and pasta. A special red tomato sauce with garlic and spices is poured over it. Crispy fried onions are placed on top. Many people love to eat Koshari because it is tasty and healthy.

Al Azhar Test

Animals in the Nile River eat different things. Small fish eat water plants. Birds eat insects, fish, and plants. Big fish eat smaller fish and tiny creatures. Crocodiles eat fish, birds, and sometimes large animals. Each animal has a role. We must protect the river to help them survive.

Test (1) - Unit 1

One bright morning, Lily woke up early and decided to visit the nearby park. She enjoyed the fresh air and listened to the birds singing happily. Lily walked slowly on the path and admired the colorful flowers all around. After spending some time in the peaceful park, she promised herself to come back every week and take care of the plants there.

Unit

2

Al Azhar Test

The heart is the most important organs of our body. It is about the size of your fist. It pumps blood to all parts of the body.

Test (2) - Unit 2

My name is Rahma. I live in Cairo with my parents. My father is a pharmacist. He plays a very important role. They make sure patients receive the correct medicine and give advice on how to use it safely. I want to be like him one day. I am proud of my father.

Unit

3

Lesson (1)

Last week, a big flood hit our town. Water covered the roads and damaged many homes. Some cars got stuck, and people had to leave their homes.

Lesson (2)

The Nile River gave water and rich soil. This helped crops grow in Ancient Egypt. Crops could not grow during a drought. People used tools to move water. Sandstorms made it hard to see.

Lesson (3)

Two frogs lived in a pond. One summer, the pond dried up. They left and found a deep well. But they didn't jump in the well.

Lesson (4)

Lily saw upside-down clouds in the sky. She was worried about her flowers. She used a whisper to fix the problem. Slowly, the clouds flipped, and the sun shone.

Al Azhar Test

Two frogs lived near a small pond. One day, the weather was very hot. The pond started to dry up. The frogs jumped to find water. They saw a deep well, but they didn't jump in.

Test (3) - Unit 3

"Last summer, two frogs lived near a small pond. The sun was very hot, and the water started to disappear. The frogs decided to find a new home. They saw a deep well and talked about it."

Review

1

Test (1 - 2 - 3)

There are many animals in the desert. These animals are able to survive in the hot and dry desert.

For example, camels can live without water for a long time and they eat plants to stay strong. Owls fly at night when the weather is cooler. Camels eat plants to stay strong.

Unit

4

Lesson (1)

Laila loves her community. Every weekend, she shops at the supermarket to pick out fresh groceries. Her favorite place is the coffee shop, where she

relaxes and drinks coffee. She often goes to the club with her friends to play sports. She thinks it's a relaxing and fun way to connect with others.

Al Azhar Test

Omar works in the New Administrative Capital. His office is in a smart building near the Iconic Tower. He enjoys walking on safe roads with green areas everywhere. Omar says it feels like a home.

Test (4) - Unit 4

Sara lives in a small village surrounded by fields and hills. She helps her grandfather, a friendly farmer, feed animals in the barn. On weekends, she visits the market in the main square. Life is simple and peaceful, and Sara always feels calm in the fresh air.

Unit 5

Lesson (2)

Gold is soft, shiny and easy to shape. People use gold to make coins and jewelry. Copper is a useful metal. It is strong and cheap. People use it to make wires, tools, and pipes. It is not as valuable as gold or diamond. In Egypt, copper is found in the Eastern Desert.

Lesson (3)

The big ship came to the shore to load cargo. Suddenly, it got stuck in the thick mud. The little digger worked hard to clear the mud. Finally, the ship was free again and thanked the little digger for the help.

Lesson (4)

Water can be in rivers, lakes, or clouds. People drink it, plants need it, and animals search for it. Sometimes, water is calm, but sometimes it floods or freezes. Without water, there would be no life.

Al Azhar Test

Last Friday, we went on a school trip to the river. The children saw fish swimming and birds flying near the river. We cleaned the street near the school and painted the old benches. Then we visited a museum in Wadi El-Hitan. It had big whale bones and some photos of the desert.

Test (5) - Unit 5

Many things we use every day come from under the ground. Gold and copper are shiny metals. Iron is very strong. People find these minerals in the desert. We must use them carefully because they are non-renewable and take many years to form.

Review 2

Test (4 - 5)

I really like Fridays. On Fridays, I have breakfast with my family in the morning. Then, I meet my friends at the club at lunchtime. We usually play football at 5 p.m. I see them more in summer. I go to the beach in July and celebrate my birthday on August 14th.

Bit by Bit

كتب في اللغة الإنجليزية



ENGLISH

ملحق تسميع المفردات والواجب المنزلي

الصف الخامس الابتدائي

الفصل الدراسي الأول

20
26



5th
PRIMARY
FIRST TERM

دار غزة

للطباعة والنشر والتوزيع

ghazzahouse@gmail.com



Unit

1

Food, Nature, and Culture

Lesson 1



Vocabulary

كائن حي	حشائش مائية
ملوك نهر النيل	نهر النيل
طعام	حشرات
حيوانات	يصيد
قوي	تمساح
كثير	سمكة صغيرة
أنهار	طيور

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يلعب / يؤدي		ياكل	
يحمي		يعرف	
يصطاد		يأتي	
يبقى حياً		يجد	

Lesson 2



Vocabulary

طاقة	الطبيعة
توازن	دور
ثعبان	صخور
سحلية	ليل
جمل	صحراء
ثعلب	النهار
فأر كبير	نباتات
بومة	

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يُقي		يُعطي	
يساعد		يأتي/ يخرج	
يأكل		يُخبِئ	

Activities

Lessons 1&2



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The Nile River is the longest _____ in Africa.
a desert **b** river **c** animal **d** plant
2. Crocodiles hunt _____ in the water.
a rocks **b** plants **c** small fish **d** camels
3. Water weeds are _____ that live in rivers.
a insects **b** birds **c** plants **d** animals

Dictation & Exercises

4. are strong animals that live in the desert.
a Birds **b** Camels **c** Crocodiles **d** Insects
5. Some birds play an important in nature.
a plant **b** food **c** role **d** desert
6. Camels and snakes are desert
a animals **b** rocks **c** rivers **d** kings
7. Crocodiles are animals that live in the Nile.
a home **b** dangerous **c** quiet **d** dry
8. Insects are food for birds and
a snakes **b** rocks **c** water weeds **d** deserts
9. People call crocodiles the of the Nile.
a kings **b** plants **c** owls **d** rivers
10. Animals get from the food they eat.
a water **b** night **c** energy **d** role
11. The desert is a hot and dry
a river **b** animal **c** plant **d** place
12. Some animals hide under in the desert.
a rivers **b** rocks **c** fish **d** insects
13. The owl is a strong bird that hunts small
a rivers **b** animals **c** plants **d** deserts

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

Crocodiles - hunt - insects – water weeds

There are many rivers around the world. The Nile is one of the longest rivers in the world. It is home to many different animals. ① are strong and dangerous. They ② large animals in or near the water. Small fish in the river eat ③ Birds eat insects, small fish and plants near the river.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Ahmed and Laila are talking about animals in the Nile River. They see small colorful fish swimming in the water. Laila tells Ahmed that these fish eat plants in the river

called water weeds. Birds eat fish, insects, and plants near the river. Big fish eat smaller fish and insects. Crocodiles eat fish, birds, and even larger animals that come near the river. Ahmed thinks crocodiles are scary, but Laila says they are the kings of the Nile. She reminds him that each animal plays an important role in nature and we must protect the river.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Small fish eat _____ in the river.

- a** birds **b** insects **c** water weeds **d** crocodiles

2. Crocodiles are called the _____ of the Nile.

- a** birds **b** kings **c** friends **d** fish

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What do birds eat near the Nile River?

4. Why are crocodiles called the "kings of the Nile"?

5. What lesson does Laila give at the end of the conversation?

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Snakes _____ (**eat always**) insects.

2. Crocodiles _____ (**eat never**) big animals.

3. Lizards always _____ (**eating**) plants in the river.

4. Crocodiles _____ (**sometimes are**) scary animals.

5. Birds _____ (**eat usually**) insects and fish.

6. Lizards _____ (**sometimes eats**) insects near the river.

7. They _____ (**often are**) late for the work.

8. Snakes _____ (**sometimes eats**) small animals near the water.

Lesson 3



Vocabulary

.....	
.....	
.....	
.....	
.....	
.....	
.....	
.....	
.....	
.....	

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
.....			
.....			
.....			
.....			
.....			
.....			
.....			

Lessons 4/5



Vocabulary

أرز.....	كشري.....
مكرونه.....	صلصة.....
موقع علي الانترنت.....	عدس.....
منشور اعلاني.....	حمص.....
وصفة طعام.....	توابل.....
دقة (ثوم وخل وتوابل).....	ثوم.....
وعاء.....	بصل.....
مصري.....	مكونات الطعام.....
برجر بالجبن.....	طعم.....
دجاج مشوي.....	خل.....
مأكولات بحرية.....	معلومات.....
شرائح.....	تقليدي.....

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يضيف.....		يقطع إلى شرائح.....	
يُحضّر.....		يتحول.....	
يقلي.....		يقطع قطع صغيرة/يفرم.....	
يسكب/ يصب.....		يضع.....	
يخلط.....		يقطع.....	
يطبخ.....		يصنع.....	

Activities

Lessons 3&4



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Trees have strong _____ that help them stand tall.
 a leaves b crowns c trunks d spices
2. The green _____ on trees help make food from sunlight.
 a roots b onions c leaves d pasta
3. Birds sit on the _____ of trees to rest.
 a feelings b branches c garlic d friends
4. Trees give us cool _____ in summer.
 a shade b care c chickpeas d rice
5. We must give water and _____ to plants.
 a crowns b care c spices d pasta
6. We all have _____ and need to be kind.
 a feelings b sauce c lentils d onions
7. My best _____ help me when I'm sad.
 a leaves b food c friends d crowns
8. A tree's top is called its _____.
 a sauce b crown c spice d root
9. A good friend understands your _____.
 a feelings b vinegar c garlic d pasta
10. Koshari is a popular _____ Egyptian dish.
 a modern b frozen c sweet d traditional
11. The main ingredient in koshari is _____.
 a chickpeas b rice c garlic d sauce
12. We add spicy tomato _____ to koshari.
 a vinegar b trunk c sauce d shade

13. _____ and pasta are mixed in koshari.

a Branches

b Lentils

c Feelings

d Crowns

14. Koshari has fried _____ on top for taste.

a onions

b plants

c trunks

d shade

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

selfish - strong - apples - weak

Tom had a healthy apple tree. The tree gave Tom ① _____ and Tom played on it. Tom traveled away and when he came back, the tree was ② _____. Tom knew that he was ③ _____. So, he decided to take care of the tree. The tree grew strong again.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Koshari is a tasty traditional Egyptian meal made with simple ingredients. First, you cook rice, pasta, and lentils in separate pots. Then, you make the red sauce by frying garlic in oil, adding tomato sauce, vinegar, and spices. To make crispy onions, you cut them into thin slices and fry them until brown and crunchy. In a bowl, put rice, pasta, lentils, and then add chickpeas. After that, pour the red sauce on top and add the crispy onions. There are two extra sauces: one is spicy tomato sauce and the other is Dakka, made with garlic and vinegar. All these flavors together make koshari very yummy!

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Koshari is a _____ Egyptian food.

a modern

b frozen

c traditional

d sweet

2. Dakka is made with garlic and _____.

a rice

b tomato

c onions

d vinegar

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What are the three main ingredients cooked in pots at the start?

Dictation & Exercises

4. How do you make the red sauce for koshari?

5. Why is koshari considered a special meal?

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. apples - from - the - Laila - tree - sweet - picked - red.

2. birds - the - watched - under - Omar - tree - the - flying.

3. strong - was - very - The - trunk - old - and - tall.

4. rice - and - Put - a bowl - pasta - in.

5. started - Ali - care - for - to - the tree.

6. again - strong - became - tree - The - it - and - green.

7. came - home - back - Nora - after - long - a - trip.

8. flowers - garden - in - the - Youssef - planted - new - today.

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Tom is selfish and he (**always**) cares for the tree.

2. Dina (**usually is**) happy on her birthday.

3. Camels always (**stores**) water in their bodies.

4. Ayman never (**watch**) TV at night.

Test on Unit 1

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكراسة



1. The _____ is one of the longest rivers in the world.

- a** Amazon **b** Nile River **c** Red Sea **d** Jordan River

2. _____ are strong and dangerous animals in the Nile River.

- a** Frogs **b** Hippos **c** Crocodiles **d** Snakes

3. Crocodiles _____ large animals near the water.

- a** watch **b** play with **c** hunt **d** hide from

4. Small fish in the river eat _____.

- a** plants **b** meat **c** insects **d** crocodiles

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. We sat under the tree to enjoy the cool _____.

- a** trunk **b** crown **c** shade **d** leaves

2. The crocodile is the _____ of the Nile.

- a** king **b** food **c** bird **d** fish

3. A _____ is a special hat worn by kings or queens.

- a** shade **b** crown **c** trunk **d** branch

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

Snakes - camels - owls - dolphins

The desert is hot and dry, but many animals live there. ① _____ often eat small animals like rats or lizards. ② _____ live in the desert, too. They eat plants to stay strong. Lizards eat insects, which give them energy. Some animals hide under rocks to stay cool during the day. Others, like ③ _____, come out

Dictation & Exercises

at night when it is cooler. Each animal has an important role in the desert. They help nature stay in balance.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Tom was a boy who loved the big apple tree in his garden. He used to play under it, eat its apples, and climb its trunk. But Tom didn't think about the tree's needs. He never watered it or gave it food. After many years, Tom returned and found the tree weak and sad. Its leaves were bent and the branches were dry. Tom felt sorry and began to take care of it. He gave it water and love. The tree became healthy again, and they became best friends.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Tom used to the tree when he was young.
☐ a forget ☐ b paint ☐ c climb ☐ d cut
2. When Tom came back, the tree was
☐ a green and strong ☐ b full of apples
☐ c sad and weak ☐ d taller than before

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What did Tom do with the tree when he was young?

.....

4. How did the tree look when Tom came back?

.....

5. What lesson did Tom learn at the end of the story?

.....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. do- we - to - Why - protect - the - Nile River - need?

.....

2. Are - many - rivers - the world - there - around?

.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Desert animals (**find rarely**) food.

2. Amr (**always is**) polite.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. what is the moral of the story

2. crocodiles are dangerous and scary

8 Write a paragraph of Thirty (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Your favorite Egyptian dish

Guiding phrases

simple ingredients - add some chickpeas

Unit 2 My Healthy Body

Lesson 1



Vocabulary

قلب	صحي / بصحة جيدة
عضلات	الجسد بالكامل
الرئتان	بالضبط
عظام	بالتأكيد
كرة القدم	عضو
يتدرب	صدر
الصحة العقلية / الصحة النفسية	الرياضة
يزيد الطاقة	العقل
بانتظام	جزء من
السباحة	ينام بشكل أفضل
لائق بدنيا	مضغوط / متوتر
في الحقيقة	يقلل الضغط / التوتر
حسناً	متعب
	عظيم

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يزيد		يجعل	
يتمرن		يفقد	
يحرك - يتحرك		يشعر	
يحاول		يصبح	
يقلل		يعطي	
يتنفس		يعتقد	
يبقى			

Lesson 2



Vocabulary

يأكل فاكهة وخضراوات.....	عادات.....
يشاهد التلفزيون.....	يستيقظ متأخراً.....
يلعب كرة القدم.....	يؤدي تمارين رياضية.....
وجبة خفيفة.....	يستيقظ مبكراً.....
ثلاجة.....	يأكل العشاء.....
عصير برتقال.....	فيتامينات.....
حلوى.....	مياه غازية.....
برجر.....	ماضي.....
بطاطس شيبسي / بطاطس.....	نزهة خلوية.....
بطيخة.....	مقلية.....
عقل / ذهن.....	تمشية.....
متبقي.....	تغييرات.....
رحلة.....	غير صحي.....

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يتغير.....		يأكل.....	
يحدث.....		يعطي.....	
يستبدل.....		يشترى.....	
يقلي.....		يستيقظ.....	
يشارك.....		يشرب.....	
يخبز.....			

Activities

Lessons 1&2



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. It's to get tired after playing sports.

- a** fast **b** normal **c** stressed **d** fit

2. Sports help us healthy.

- a** stay **b** walk **c** make **d** follow

3. Samy gets early on weekends.

- a** at **b** on **c** for **d** up

4. are the organs of your chest that help you breathe.

- a** Muscles **b** Lungs **c** Vitamins **d** Habits

5. How do you care of your health?

- a** feel **b** take **c** make **d** help

6. Exercising regularly helps you stress.

- a** think **b** reduce **c** give **d** increase

7. Our bones and help us move, run, and walk.

- a** hearts **b** lungs **c** muscles **d** teeth

8. When we play, we lose weight.

- a** sports **b** music **c** games **d** cartoons

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

vitamins - habits - instead - minds

My brother Hisham eats unhealthy food. He can't walk. He should change his ① He thinks about a healthier life. He should eat a lot of water ② of soda. Eating a lot of fruit and vegetables gives us more ③ These changes give us more energy.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. favorite - What's - snack - your?

2. you - habits - Have - changed - your?

3. to watch - I - TV - used - all day

4. habits - very - are - Healthy - important

5. have - any - We - in - don't - the kitchen - food

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Do you have ----- (an) water?

2. There is ----- (any) juice in the glass.

3. Are there ----- (some) apples for the picnic?

4. I like eating ----- (a) orange every day.

5. They bought ----- (some) bottle of oil.

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. There aren t any eggs in the box

2. does Hoda eat any snacks

Lesson 3



Vocabulary

مضخة.....	خلية.....
عضو.....	انبوب.....
قبضة اليد.....	يؤذي / يؤلم.....
بقايا - نفايات.....	قلب.....
الأوعية الدموية.....	التمرير.....
الضغط / التوتر.....	نصائح.....
عضلة.....	قوي.....
يضخ الدم.....	بإحكام.....
أكسجين.....	خارق / فائق.....
عناصر غذائية.....	حجم.....
ثاني أكسيد الكربون.....	وظيفة.....
فضلات.....	غاز.....
	على قيد الحياة.....

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
ينبض.....		يتخلص من - يزيل.....	
يحافظ على.....		يؤذي - يجرح.....	
ينمو - يكبر.....		يجري.....	

Lessons 4/5



Vocabulary

رؤية	صيدلي
معرفة	مسعف (الإسعاف الطبي)
دور	مريض
دواء	علاج
نصيحة	سماعة الطبيب
طيبة / لطف	يشخص مرض
راحة	الرعاية الصحية
عاجل	بطل
ارواح	منقذون
مرض	معجون اسنان
مهاراة	الطوارئ
مسرور	طبيب
بأمان	مجتمع
سبب	جلد
فخور	عمال
عصبي / متوتر	ممرضة
يوميًا	متعب

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يعالج		يشجع	
يفحص		ينقل	
يزود بـ		يقضي	
يستجيب لـ		يتأكد	
يحدد / يعرف		يرتدي	
يشخص		يعطي	
يستلم / يستقبل		يبين	

Activities

Lessons 3-4&5



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The heart is about the size of your

- a** cell **b** fist **c** hand **d** organ

2. The heart is a strong muscle that keeps us

- a** alive **b** dead **c** sick **d** stress

3. your teeth daily with toothpaste.

- a** Wash **b** Brush **c** Sleep **d** Exercise

4. Nurses often work around the to give support for patients.

- a** clock **b** chair **c** car **d** spot

5. provide urgent help to patients.

- a** Paramedics **b** Volunteers **c** Muscles **d** Pharmacists

6. Too much stress can your heart.

- a** beat **b** protect **c** save **d** hurt

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

diagnose - active - spend - meals

There are many healthcare workers in our country. They ¹ their lives helping others. They also encourage us to eat healthy ², stay ³, and stop harmful habits. They are called heroes. We should be proud of them.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Our heart is the most important organ in our body. It's about the size of your fist. It pumps blood to all parts of the body through blood vessels. Inside the heart, blood carries oxygen and nutrients to every cell and takes away waste like carbon dioxide. So, we should do our best to take care of our hearts. We should eat good food, sleep well, and drink a lot of water. Exercise helps keep our heart pump better and saves us from getting sick. Stress is harmful to our heart. To keep our heart good, we should feel happy and have a lot of energy.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The heart pumps blood through

- a** organs **b** vessels **c** nutrients **d** muscles

2. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to

- a** blood **b** body **c** heart **d** oxygen

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What's harmful to our heart?

.....

4. What should we do to keep our heart healthy?

.....

5. How does exercise help the heart?

.....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. enough - Drink - daily - water.

2. workers - are - Who - the - healthcare?

3. emergencies - respond - Paramedics - quickly - in.

4. do - good - How - protect - habits - hearts - our?

5. follow - every - You - habits - healthy - should - day.

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. I need to cut (**a**) onion for the salad.

2. We don't have (**some**) cheese in the fridge.

3. My sister bought (**any**) new dresses for the party.

4. There isn't (**a**) sugar in my coffee.

5. Ahmed eats (**an**) banana every day.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. we should thank healthcare workers

2. what do nurses give for patients

Test on Unit 2

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكراسة



1. My Mr. Ayman is healthy.

- a** brother **b** father **c** neighbor **d** uncle

2. Mr. Ayman is very strong and

- a** fit **b** stressed **c** tired **d** tall

3. Mr. Ayman can sleep better and reduce

- a** bones **b** weight **c** stress **d** energy

4. Playing sport makes Mr. Ayman's stronger.

- a** energy **b** bones **c** fruit **d** fist

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Ahmed for a walk every day.

- a** shows **b** shares **c** goes **d** buys

2. make sure patients receive the correct medicine.

- a** Paramedics **b** Pharmacists **c** Vets **d** Nurses

3. We should thank our parents and show them

- a** respect **b** nervous **c** stress **d** hurt

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

changes - vessels - early - vitamins

Parents should encourage their children to be fit and healthy. They encourage their children to change their habits. Most children watch TV and play games all day. They should eat fruit and vegetables which give them ① They should go for a walk and eat dinner ② These ③ help them feel better.

Dictation & Exercises

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Paramedics are very important in our community. They help people who are very sick or hurt. When there's an emergency, like a car accident, paramedics come quickly in an ambulance. When paramedics arrive, they check how the person is feeling. They carry the first aid box that contains bandages and medicine to help people feel better. They carry a stethoscope to listen to the heart. Then, they take the sick or hurt person to the hospital and talk to the doctors and nurses there. I want to be a paramedic when I grow up. So, I want to follow a journey to a healthier life. I should be fit and feel good. Exercising is important, too. Paramedics run quickly to save people's lives. They are great people who we should thank.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Paramedics are people who

a teach children

b build houses

c help sick and hurt people

d tell news

2. Paramedics carry a to listen to the heart.

a first aid box

b bandage

c stethoscope

d toothpaste

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why is exercising important for paramedics?

.....

4. Where do paramedics take the sick and hurt person?

.....

5. What does the writer want to follow to be a paramedic?

.....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. does - **When** - beat - the heart - faster?

.....

2. every - important - Is - exercise - it - to - day?

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Would you like (a) orange juice?

2. There (aren't) any sugar in the tea.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. we should stop harmful habits

2. what is bad for the heart

8 Write a paragraph of Thirty (30) words using the following guiding questions:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Your healthy habits

Guiding phrases

eat fruit and vegetables

sleep early

Lesson 1



Vocabulary

عاصفة رعدية	أخبار
عاصفة رملية	يتلف/يُدمر
فيضان	ينتشر
جفاف	عالق
حريق الغابات	كوكب
موجة حر	بدون مطر
الصين	محاصيل
فلاح	جاف
غابة	جبل
رياح	بسرعة
موطن/بيت	مخيف
شوارع	غرفة المعيشة
مدينة	امن
قليل	فظيع/رهيب

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يغطي		يضرِب	
يبدو/ينظر		يسمَع	
يدمر		يضرِب إلي	
فيضان		ينحسر/يتعلق	
يبقى		يفقد/يخسر	
يتمنى		يتعلم	
يساعد		ينتشر	
		يحرق	

Lesson 2



Vocabulary

مصر القديمة	يبقى علي قيد الحياة
تربة الغنية	يحل
أحواض	طقس
مطر غير كافي	مزرعة مدمرة
سميك	جفاف
الطوب اللبن	منخفض
فيضان/يفيض	رياح ساخنة
عاصفة رملية	ذكي/انيق
قنوات مائية	قوي
جاف	ادوات بسيطة
الآلات	انظمة الري
سخونة/حرارة	محاصيل
الزراعة	صحراء

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يتوقف		يستخدم	
يتحكم		يصنع	
يحدث		يعطي	
يحل		يحضر	
يحمي		يبني	
يتنفس		ينشر/يوزع	
ينجو		يصبح	

Activities Lessons 1&2



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Droughts made the land

- a** rich **b** dry **c** cool **d** wet

2. The Ancient Egyptians built their homes with thick bricks to stop the sand.

- a** rich **b** mud **c** plastic **d** papyrus

3. The wildfire was spreading and many trees down.

- a** lost **b** stuck **c** burned **d** protected

4. The villagers' houses were after the storm hit it.

- a** damaged **b** flooded **c** stuck **d** worked

5. There's a, so we need to have cool drinks.

- a** flood **b** heat wave **c** wildfire **d** storm

6. The wind was so strong and the fire quickly in the trees.

- a** spread **b** survived **c** solved **d** brought

7. When there's too much water covering dry land, it is a

- a** wildfire **b** flood **c** drought **d** sandstorm

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

solved - cool - splashed - fruit

I heard on the news that there was a heat wave. We took care of ourselves. We stayed in the shade. We had ① drinks. We ate ② like watermelons. I ③ some water on my face to cool down.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. the - covered - streets - The water.

.....

2. are - the - Children - of - lightning - afraid.

.....

3. Egypt - was - in - The - Ancient - weather - different.

.....

4. stop - How - the Ancient - did - Egyptians - flood - the?

.....

5. prevented - from - A drought - farmers - food - growing.

.....

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Did you (visited) the museum?

2. She (travels) to Aswan last year.

3. (Do) your brother help you yesterday?

4. We (don't) go to school last Monday.

5. (Are) there floods in the past?

6. Mona (is) at the park two hours ago.

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

1- how was the weather in Ancient Egypt

2- canals were built to control water

Lesson 3



Vocabulary

ذبابَة (ذباب).....	يُحكي أن/ذات مرة.....
ضفدع.....	صديق مفضل.....
للغاية.....	بركة.....
بئر عميق.....	بأمان.....
راحة.....	يقفز لأعلى/يُثب.....
الصيف.....	الشمس الدافئة.....
بدلاً من ذلك.....	قوي.....
معا.....	آمن.....
حفرة.....	الحياة اليومية.....
جناح.....	قرية هادئة.....
السباحة.....	حافة/طرف.....

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يقفز لأعلى.....		يخرج.....	
يعيش.....		يصبح.....	
يجف.....		يغادر.....	
يقرر أن.....		يسبح.....	
يوافق.....		يحفر.....	
يؤثر على.....		يصطاد.....	

Lessons 4/5



Vocabulary



ملصقة.....	اشعة الشمس.....
دافئ/مريح.....	غريب.....
سحب منفوشة.....	رأسنا على عقب.....
همسة/يهمس.....	انقلبوا للوضع الصحيح.....
طيبة/عطف.....	يقلب/ينقلب.....
لامع/ساطع.....	بطريقة ساحرة.....
بشكل ساطع.....	فرح/سعادة.....
مشكلة.....	صباح مشمس.....
جدة.....	حالات الطقس.....
بطيء.....	صغير.....
سحب.....	وردة.....
	لطيف.....

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يطفو.....		يعتقد.....	
يصلح.....		يبدأ.....	
يصفق.....		تسطع.....	
يبتسم.....		يلصق.....	
يحل.....		يقلب.....	
يتذكر.....			

Activities

Lessons 3-4&5



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The weather in the heat wave became hot.

- a** safely **b** extremely **c** sadly **d** gently

2. A is an area of water, usually smaller than a lake.

- a** frog **b** pond **c** well **d** fly

3. Hoda is a polite girl and she always speaks in a /an way.

- a** hard **b** gentle **c** noisy **d** ugly

4. Dark mean it might rain soon.

- a** clouds **b** stars **c** problems **d** planes

5. The students for the cleverest girl in the class.

- a** floated **b** clapped **c** solved **d** grew

6. can be solved with a bit of kindness.

- a** Whispers **b** Problems **c** Clouds **d** happiness

7. The sun brightly and the flowers smiled.

- a** floated **b** dug **c** shone **d** stuck

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

searched - dried - pond - worried

On a hot summer, there were two frogs. They were in the small ¹ together.
The sun was strong and the small pond started to dry up. They got ²
Then, they decided to leave the pond. They ³ for a safe home.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة وأجب عن الأسئلة:

One day, there was a boy called Penny. He liked planting flowers. He had a garden full of flowers. On Summer, the weather was extremely hot. The land became dry. He was sad because the flowers would die. He looked at the sky and whispered gently to the clouds. He said, "please, dear clouds, turn into rain." Suddenly the rain fell down quickly. Penny clapped his hands with joy. He learnt from his grandpa that big problems could be solved with a little bit of kindness and a gentle whisper. His flowers grew again and smiled.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "whispered" means to talk
 a quickly b loudly c quietly d angrily
2. Penny's garden was full of
 a crops b leaves c grass d flowers

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What's the main idea of the passage?

4. Why did Penny clap his hands with joy?

5. What happened to the flowers when the land became dry?

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. lived - a cozy - Lily - little - in - house.

2. did - Why - the frogs - worried - get?

Dictation & Exercises

3. heavy - covered - The - flood - roads - the.

4. sailed - The - across - boat - the - lake..

5. a better - They - home - searched - for

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. We (**hear**) a loud sound outside last night.

2. I (**finish**) my homework three hours ago.

3. The sun shone brightly and the flowers (**smile**).

4. Why (**doesn't**) you come to the party yesterday?

5. There (**isn't**) enough water in the pond an hour ago.

Test on Unit 3

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكراسة



1. The extreme weather caused to the Ancient Egypt.

- a** pollution **b** problems **c** happiness **d** traffic

2. The Ancient Egyptians didn't have modern

- a** machines **b** buildings **c** tools **d** crops

3. The Ancient Egyptians used simple to protect themselves.

- a** bricks **b** tools **c** ways **d** lives

4. The Ancient Egyptians found smart ways to from heat and floods.

- a** search **b** survive **c** die **d** work

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. To means to jump high and far in one big movement.

- a** leap **b** rest **c** search **d** leave

2. The frogs lived together in a small

- a** habit **b** river **c** ocean **d** pond

3. Droughts made the Nile's water

- a** soil **b** spread **c** high **d** low

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

bricks – safe – clouds – winds

Sandstorms are one of the most extreme weather in Ancient Egypt. These sandstorms, called Khamsin, brought strong hot ① with sand. It was hard to see and breathe. People stayed inside to stay ② They built their homes with thick mud ③ to protect themselves.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

There are many different kinds of extreme weather all over the world. We can often hear the news about floods which cause great damage. The water covers streets and many cars are stuck. A wildfire is another kind of extreme weather, when fires can spread quickly. When it is dry, many trees can be burned and animals can lose their homes. Drought is also a dangerous kind of extreme weather. It happens when there is no rain for a long time. The land becomes very dry, so farmers can't grow many crops or keep animals.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The text is about

- ☐ a irrigation ☐ b extreme weather ☐ c healthy habits ☐ d water

2. Cars are stuck during

- ☐ a drought ☐ b floods ☐ c storms ☐ d wildfire

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Mention three kinds of extreme weather.

.....

4. What happens during a wildfire?

.....

5. Why can't farmers grow in drought?

.....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. frogs - The - through - two - leaped - fields.

.....

2. whisper - could - things - fix - A gentle.

.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. My father (**eat his lunch**) at home yesterday.
2. The Ancient Egyptians (**make**) irrigation systems.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- 1- animals need water to survive

- 2- what did you do during a thunderstorm

8 Write a paragraph of Thirty (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Extreme weather in Ancient Egypt

Guiding questions

1. What kinds of extreme weather in the past?
2. How did the Ancient Egyptians protect themselves?

Unit 4 My Community

Lesson 1



Vocabulary

.....مطعم	عطلة نهاية الأسبوع
.....مقهى	شخصيًا
.....مخبز	خبز طازج
.....متجر	مريح
.....نادى رياضى	رغيف/أرغفة
.....مدينة الملاهى/متنزه	جرسون
.....حي سكني	صحى
.....مجتمع	وجبة
.....مستلزمات بقالة	رائحة
.....ممتع	مفضل
.....مختلف	بالقرب من

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
.....يسترخى		يذهب	
.....يحاول/يجرب		يشترى	
.....يتدرب		يشرب	
.....يتشوق		يحضر	
.....يزور			

Lessons 2/3



Vocabulary

قرية	تلال
حقول	ودود
الساحة الرئيسية	مريح
حظيرة (مزرعة)	فلاح
مركز مجتمعي	الأكثر ازدحاماً
كوخ / منزل ريفي	هادئ / مطمئن
الحياة	بسيط
هادئ	مدينة

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يعيش		يرى	
يعمل		يغنى	
يمشي		يقابل	
يستمتع بـ		يطعم	
يحتفل		يربى	
يجتمع		يبيع	
يلسمع		يقضى	

Activities

Lessons 1,2



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. We buy fresh bread from the every morning.

- a** supermarket **b** club **c** coffee shop **d** bakery

2. She likes to drink a hot cup of in the morning.

- a** lemon **b** water **c** coffee **d** juice

Dictation & Exercises

3. My dad and I go to the to buy food for the whole week.
a coffee shop **b** club **c** supermarket **d** restaurant
4. A small place that serves hot drinks like coffee is a
a restaurant **b** supermarket **c** coffee shop **d** club
5. We eat a big for dinner every night.
a snack **b** plate **c** meal **d** loaf
6. My favorite place to go with friends is the
a supermarket **b** bakery **c** hospital **d** theme park
7. We pick out healthy every weekend at the supermarket.
a clothes **b** rides **c** groceries **d** loaf
8. I train and sports at the club near my house.
a relax **b** shop **c** bring **d** play
9. The bread smells so at the bakery.
a old **b** stale **c** bad **d** fresh
10. I like to eat food to stay strong and not get sick.
a junk **b** sweet **c** healthy **d** fried
11. The is the place where the cows sleep at night.
a cottage **b** city **c** barn **d** center
12. He lives in a small up in the mountains.
a barn **b** city **c** cottage **d** square
13. The feeling of being warm and comfortable is being
a quiet **b** busiest **c** cozy **d** friendly
14. We went to the new to play basketball with our neighbors.
a cottage **b** barn
c community center **d** city
15. My dog is very and loves to play with everyone.
a cozy **b** peaceful **c** friendly **d** noisy

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

hang - fields - sports - meal

On Friday nights, I go to a restaurant with friends. We order different foods and share a meal .The ① is always nice. After dinner, we sometimes go to a club to play ② That sounds nice! It's a fun way to end the week. I love to ③ out with friends and enjoy the night.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة

1. keep - Farmers - in - the - animals - barns.

2. the - fields - We - see - working - farmers - in.

3. restaurant - We - to - the - to- eat- go - lunch.

4. Friday - They - usually - supermarket - go to - the - on.

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. I wake up (on) 7 a.m. every day.

2. She gets home (on) the afternoon.

3. The meeting is (during) Tuesday.

4. The store closes (in) 9:00 p.m in the evening.

5. We often travel (at) 7th October.

6. My birthday is (on) June.

7. Let's meet (in) lunchtime.

8. The leaves turn red and orange (at) autumn.

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1- when did omar go to the coffee shop?

2- ahmed loves his neighborhood

Lessons 4/5



Vocabulary

ازدحام/تكدس	مريح
ذكي	عامل البناء
العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة	هام/مهم
الحكومة	مبنى
البرج الأيقوني	قارة أفريقيا
فولاذ/صلب	مطار
تقريباً	طابق/دور
في كل مكان	قمة
كيلومتر	كل
شرق	وظيفة
التكنولوجيا الحديثة	آمن
طريق	صحي
طاقة	مساحات خضراء

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يقلل		يحدد (موقع)	
يصمم		يبني	
يدير/يتحكم		عنده/يمتلك	

Activities

Lessons 3,4&5



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. is a very tall building in the New Administrative Capital.

a The Pyramid

b The Great Wall

c The Iconic Tower

d The Eiffel Tower

2. The New Administrative Capital is a very city, with new buildings and technology.

a modern

b old

c dirty

d small

3. The government moved their main offices to the New Administrative Capital to help

a build roads

b create a new city

c reduce crowding

d stop traffic

4. The Iconic Tower is the tallest in all of Africa.

a house

b building

c road

d mall

5. The new city is built to Cairo.

a far away from

b inside

c near

d on top of

6. The New Administrative Capital is a place to live and work.

a dangerous

b unhealthy

c safe

d boring

7. The builder made sure the buildings have good air to be

a tired

b busy

c safe

d healthy

8. The of the Iconic Tower has a great view of the city.

a bottom

b middle

c basement

d top

9. The new city has wide and bridges for cars.

a parks

b rivers

c roads

d schools

10. The word "**crowding**" means there are too many in one place.

a buildings

b carts

c animals

d people

Dictation & Exercises

11. The New Administrative Capital is a very big

- a** city **b** house **c** club **d** street

12. The new city has many for people to relax in.

- a** parking lots **b** office buildings
c green areas **d** shopping centers

13. The New Administrative Capital project created many new

- a** jobs **b** problems **c** buildings **d** cities

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

building - energy - steel - areas

My family and I live in the New Administrative Capital, 45km east of Cairo. This new city has green **1** everywhere. It has also the tallest **2** in Africa, the Iconic Tower. It's made of strong glass and **3** There are a lot of jobs and the life is peaceful.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة وأجب عن الأسئلة:

The New Administrative Capital is a modern city in Egypt. It has tall buildings made of steel and glass. The Iconic Tower is the tallest, with many floors. The city uses smart technology to reduce crowding. There are wide roads and many green areas. It is an important place for the government and businesses. That's cool!

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The tallest building in the New Administrative Capital is

- a** a small house **b** the Iconic Tower
c a supermarket **d** an old museum

2. The city uses smart technology to

- a** make more noise **b** reduce crowding
c close the roads **d** stop people from working

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What are the buildings in the New Administrative Capital made of?

.....

4. Why is the New Administrative Capital important?

5. What helps make the city comfortable for people?

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. club - We - to - the - on go - Fridays.

2. The - high - Iconic - 385 - Tower - is - meters.

3. Iconic - is - The - of - strong - steel - made - Tower.

4. is - Modern - manage - used to - roads - technology.

5. steel - often - use - towers- strong - to - Builders - build.

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. I will see you(on) midday.

2. The meeting is(in) Tuesday.

3. I sometimes get up(for) midnight to get a glass of water.

4. The school was built(at) the 18th century.

5. The concert is(in) Christmas Eve.

6. I wake up(in) 7 a.m. every day.

7. She gets home(on) the afternoon.

8. He has a doctor's appointment(at) Monday morning.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1- it is my favorite city in egypt.

2- What s the Iconic Tower made of

Test on Unit 4

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكراسة



1. is the tallest building in Africa.

a The Grand Building

b The New York Tower

c The Iconic Tower

d The Capital Tower

2. will move to the New Administrative Capital soon.

a Builders

b Government workers

c Smart people

d Everyone

3. Smart technology in the new capital will help to

a build more buildings

b make a new road

c reduce traffic and save energy

d make people happy

4. You can see from the top floors of the Iconic Tower.

a the whole country

b the whole city

c the whole world

d the whole of Africa

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. A is a place where you can ride roller coasters and other attractions.

a club

b supermarket

c bakery

d theme park

2. The of the restaurant was very polite and helpful.

a waiter

b teacher

c doctor

d nurse

3. The word "**smart**" means the city uses modern

a cars

b people

c technology

d buildings

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

energy - fresh - technology - floor

Last weekend I visited the New Administrative city, about 45km east of Cairo. The buildings use clean ① and modern ② My favorite place is the top ③ of a shopping building - you can see all the green areas from there!

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

On Fridays Omar usually goes shopping with his mother. They often go to the supermarket to buy groceries. Omar picks out fruits, vegetables, and a loaf of bread. Sometimes, They pass by the bakery because the smell of fresh bread is amazing and they buy loaves of bread. They try to buy healthy food. After shopping, they go home to cook a big meal.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Omar buys at the supermarket.

- a** clothes and toys **b** groceries **c** a new car **d** books

2. Omar passes by the bakery

- a** to hang out with friends **b** to eat a meal
c as the smell of fresh bread is amazing **d** to go on a ride

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What kind of food does Omar try to buy?

4. What do they do after they finish shopping?

5. Besides fruits and vegetables, what else does Omar buy at the supermarket?

Dictation & Exercises

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. you - with - Do - come - want - me - to?

2. is - peaceful - in - Life - the village.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. The store closes (in) 9:00 p.m.

2. We often travel (on) October.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. egypt builds new cities almost everywhere

2. where do you go when you're hungry

8 Write a paragraph of Thirty (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

My visit to Alexandria

Guiding phrases

I visited.....

I went with.....

Lesson 1



Vocabulary

اشعة الشمس / ضوء الشمس	شركة بترول
وقود حفري	وقود
ماء	حديد
تربة	مباني
معادن	زراعة
رياح	قمح
كهرباء	ارض خصبة
الطبيعة	معدن الذهب
مصادر طبيعية	منطقة
الحياة اليومية	مجوهرات
قطن	مباني

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يتحدث		يعرف	
يساعد		يجد	
يعمل		يصنع	
يمد/زود		ينمو / يزرع	
يستخدم		يقرأ	
		يذكر/ يسمي	

Lesson 2



Vocabulary

أكثر قيمة	أسلاك كهربائية
الموارد المعدنية	أنابيب
ذهب	أدوات
الالماس	طائرة
معدن قوي	كوبرى
غير متجددة	عمال مناجم
الصحراء الغربية	نحاس
عميق	حديد
ملايين السنين	عملات معدنية
مثالي	مجوهرات
مجوهرات حقيقية	معدن نادر
مراوح	أرض
سهل	بحكمة
ارخص	ثمين
قوي جدا	شواحن
	تحت الارض

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يضع		يصنع	
يستخدم		ياخذ	
يساعد		يحصل على	
يجد		يحفر	
		ينقذ	

Activities

Lessons 1,2



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

- _____ are things that come from nature, like water and soil.
a Man-made items **b** Valuable rocks **c** Natural resources **d** Daily things
- _____ is the source of light and warmth for the Earth.
a Fossil fuel **b** Sunlight **c** Wind **d** Electricity
- The _____ is a big source of water in Egypt that is important for farming.
a sea **b** Nile River **c** lake **d** desert
- _____ is the soft ground where plants grow.
a Soil **b** Water **c** Minerals **d** Sand
- _____ are things like gold, iron, and copper that we get from the Earth.
a Towers **b** Fossil fuels **c** Trees **d** Minerals
- _____ is a strong, valuable metal used to make jewelry and coins.
a Copper **b** Iron **c** Gold **d** Fossil fuel
- _____ is the moving air that we can use to make electricity.
a Sunlight **b** Wind **c** Water **d** Natural gas
- _____ is used to make tools, pipes, and electrical wires.
a Gold **b** Diamond **c** Copper **d** Water

Dictation & Exercises

9. We use _____ to build tall buildings and strong bridges.

a gold

b steel

c soil

d copper

10. A liquid from the ground used for fuel is _____.

a oil

b water

c coffee

d sand

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

valuable - jewelry - diamond - miners

The Earth also holds precious minerals like gold and diamonds. Gold is a valuable soft metal used for **1** _____ and coins. A **2** _____ is a very rare and **3** _____. These treasures are often hidden deep inside the Earth. They are beautiful and important to us.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Natural resources are things from nature that we use every day to live. They are like hidden treasures of the Earth. Sunlight, water, and wind are natural resources. We use sunlight to grow food and water from the Nile River for farming. These are very important for our life. Some natural resources are non-renewable, meaning they cannot be replaced. Fossil fuels like natural gas and oil are used for fuel and electricity. Miners dig deep into the Earth to find mineral resources. Iron is a strong metal we use for bridges and buildings, while copper is used for electrical wires.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Some natural resources are non-renewable and they can't be _____.

a precious

b used

c replaced

d shaped

2. Copper is used for _____.

a making computer

b growing plants

c making electrical wires

d cooking meals

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What are some examples of natural resources mentioned in the passage?

4. According to the passage, what do miners do?

5. Summarize the text in one sentence.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة

1. valuable - than - Diamond - gold - is - more.

2. for - We - wires- copper - use - electrical.

3. earth, - the - find - precious - Under - resources - we.

4. use - for - coins - People - and - jewelry - gold.

5. years - Minerals - millions - of - to- take - form.

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. An elephant is (**big**) than a mouse.

2. A car is (**fast**) than a bicycle.

3. The sun is (**hot**) than the moon.

4. My brother is (**tall**) than me.

5. A lion is (**strong**) than a cat.

6. Summer is (**warm**) than winter.

7. A plane is (**expensive**) than a bus.

8. My new phone is (**good**) than my old one.

9. This book is (**interesting**) than that movie.

10. The city is (**crowded**) than the village.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. where is iron found in Egypt

2. gold is used to make jewelry

Lesson 3



Vocabulary

سفينة	حفار صغير
فخور	سميك / كثيف
أخيراً	يحمل / يشحن
بحذر	شحنة / حمولة
شاطئ	ممر / مسار / طريق
كل شخص	يستسلم
محيط	الحجم
طين	القوة
ماكينات	مشهور
ضخم	ثقل
مستعد	واضح
مندهش	صغير الحجم
صغير	ممتن

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يحملق		يحصل	
يضحك		يقلع / يستسلم	
يعجب		يري	
يبحر		يستسلم	
يضايق		يقول	
يحمل		يعتقد	
يندفع		يسمح	
يسحب-يجر		يطفو	

Lessons 4/5



Vocabulary

دمعة.....	يعرق.....
جامع/نائر.....	يدمر.....
يستحم.....	بحيرات.....
مياه.....	سحابة.....
نهر.....	ناس.....
مطر.....	نباتات.....
مصاب/مؤلم.....	محيطات.....
حيوانات.....	بدون.....
حياة.....	شكل.....
زجاج.....	نسبة مئوية.....
ساكن/ثابت.....	

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يستحم.....		يرقص.....	
يكي.....		ينام.....	
يبحث.....		يشرب.....	
يعرق.....		يدمر.....	
يدمر.....		يقع/يسقط.....	
يصطدم.....		يتجمد.....	
يبرد.....			

Activities

Lessons 3,4&5



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. A helps dig deep holes in the ground.
 a ship b digger c glass d cloud
2. Big ships carry heavy across the ocean.
 a cargo b mud c plants d clouds
3. The between two mountains is often narrow.
 a ocean b path c shore d river
4. When something is very big, we say it is
 a little b huge c clear d ready
5. The is where the ocean meets the land.
 a shore b river c cloud d glass
6. Water is very important natural
 a amount b resource c shape d path
7. We can see fish swimming in and rivers.
 a oceans b clouds c machines d cargo
8. Without water, there would be no on Earth.
 a life b ships c diggers d strength
9. helps plants grow from the soil.
 a Glass b Rain c Mud d Machines

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

save - electricity - plants - resource

We use water for many different things. People who are thirsty drink water. Farmers use water for their ¹ We use it to clean our hands and our homes. We can also use the strength of water from a river to make ² Water is a very useful ³ that helps us in our daily life.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

There was a little lake near a wild forest. The water in the lake was clear like glass. A little animal came from a village nearby to drink from the lake. It was thirsty and hurt. Everyone in the village felt bad for the animal. They wanted to help it. Finally, they decided to fill a pot with water and gave it to the animal to drink and carefully took it to a safe place. It was a very good thing to do.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The little animal came from a

a village

b town

c station

d park

2. People felt about the hurt animal.

a happy

b bad

c angry

d nothing

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What did the people do to help the animal?

.....

4. How was the water in the lake?

.....

5. Give a suitable title for passage.

.....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة

1. has - Egypt - natural - many - resources.

.....

2. and - animals - need - water - live - People - to.

.....

3. his - the - Seleem - bicycle - to - park - rode.

.....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. A snail is(slow) than a turtle.
2. This exercise is(easy) than the last one.
3. Her hair is(long) than his.
4. A mountain is(high) than a hill.
5. My house is(far) from school than yours.
6. The test was(difficult) than I expected.
7. I feel much(happy) today than yesterday.
8. The Nile River is(long) than the Thames River.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. what do we learn from the story

2. gold is cheaper than diamond

Test on Unit 5

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكراسة



1. Plants need _____ to live.

- ☐ a glass ☐ b water ☐ c mud ☐ d ships

2. Plants get _____ without rain.

- ☐ a bigger ☐ b thirsty ☐ c taller ☐ d wider

3. _____ can hurt plants.

- ☐ a Clean water ☐ b Dirty water ☐ c Small lakes ☐ d Wild animals

4. _____ also drink from small lakes.

- ☐ a Only people ☐ b Only plants ☐ c Wild animals ☐ d Big ships

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. We use _____ to make cars, machines, and many kinds of tools.

- ☐ a copper ☐ b gold ☐ c iron ☐ d glass

2. The goods carried on a ship or plane are called the _____.

- ☐ a path ☐ b cargo ☐ c mud ☐ d people

3. Everyone _____ the party. It was amazing.

- ☐ a covered ☐ b admired ☐ c floated ☐ d removed

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

wind - resources - energy - minerals

We have many natural resources that come from nature. The sun gives us sunlight to grow plants, and the ① _____ gives us power. The Earth has many treasures, like ② _____ and precious stones. We also have fossil fuels such as oil and natural gas that give us ③ _____ for our cars and homes.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

A huge yellow digger works near the river. It has great strength and can lift heavy cargo. The digger makes a path through thick mud. Everyone watches as it carefully moves dirt. The machine is amazing! Finally, it clears the area. People are proud of this hard-working machine. Without diggers, building would be very difficult.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The digger can lift

a flowers

b heavy cargo

c water

d clouds

2. People are proud of the digger because it

a is yellow

b is a hard-working machine

c can fly

d is small

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why are diggers important?

.....

4. What does the digger do near the river?

.....

5. How do people feel when they watch the digger?

.....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

1. ship - tried - big - to - **Who** - the - help?

.....

2. and - find - underground - **We** - minerals - metals.

.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Your bag is (**heavy**) than mine.
2. It's much (**cold**) in January than in March.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. gold is a valuable metal

2. what are the most important natural resources

8 Write a paragraph of Thirty (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Our natural resources

Guiding questions

1. How can natural resources help us?
2. What are renewable and non-renewable resources?

امتحانات عامة على منهج الفصل الدراسي الأول

Test 1

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وأختَر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. There are _____ small fish in the Nile River.
a bored **b** dangerous **c** bad **d** colorful
2. The small fish eat _____ in the water.
a water weeds **b** crocodiles **c** sharks **d** fish
3. Birds near the Nile eat small fish and _____.
a animals **b** turtles **c** insects **d** planes
4. _____ are the kings of the Nile.
a Weeds **b** Crocodiles **c** Turtles **d** Big fish

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Swimming is a great way to work all your _____.
a hair **b** bones **c** head **d** feet
2. I bought some fresh bread from the _____.
a restaurant **b** club **c** theme park **d** bakery
3. We must _____ the Nile River.
a destroy **b** damage **c** provide **d** protect

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

hide - dry - store - lizards

Many animals live in the desert. It is very hot and **1** _____. Snakes often eat small animals like rats or **2** _____. Lizards eat insects, which give them energy. Camels live in the desert, too. They eat plants to stay strong. Some animals **3** _____ under rocks to stay cool during the day.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Mustafa. I am 23 years old. I am an engineer. My hobbies are listening to music and watching television. When I am free, I often listen to my favourite songs.

At weekends, I usually go to music shops to buy good CDs. I always feel tired after a day's work. So, I usually listen to music in order to forget all worries of work. Also, listening to music will help me become relaxed and more comfortable before starting my work. I also spend an hour after dinner watching news and programs.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mustafa is a \ an

a teacher

b doctor

c engineer

d teacher

2. The underlined word "me" refers to

a music

b games

c songs

d Mustafa

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What are Mustafa's hobbies?

4. Where does Mustafa buy good CDs?

5. Summarize the text in one sentence.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make a sentence:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة:

1. there - What - animals - plants - kinds of - live - and?

2. when - happened - rain - there - Droughts - enough - was not.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. We (visit) Paris last summer.

2. Diamond is (valuable) than gold.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. I have a book a pen and a pencil.

2. was she in Giza last week

8 Write a paragraph of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

The Nile River

Guiding Words

longest - different animals

Test 2

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع و أختار الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



- Many animals live in the
 a Tower b Sea c Nile d desert
- The desert is very hot and
 a high b dry c easy d tall
- Snakes often eat small animals like or lizards.
 a rats b turtles c cats d ibis
- Some animals hide under rocks to stay during the day.
 a nice b strong c healthy d cool

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

- At the you can go on rides.
 a theme park b desert c restaurant d hospitals
- We need to find some from the hot sun.
 a soil b electricity c shade d energy
- Egypt's deserts contain many such as gold and iron.
 a crops b companies c secrets d minerals

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

respect - illnesses - real-life - skills

Healthcare workers like doctors, nurses, pharmacists, and paramedics are ¹ heroes who spend their lives helping others. They work day and night to keep people healthy and treat ² These heroes work long hours with kindness. We should thank them by caring for our health and showing them ³

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Health is one of the most important things in our life. Everyone wants to keep healthy but some people think it is difficult because they are busy. There are some easy things you should do to keep healthy. You should drink water instead of soda. It tastes good but it has much sugar. Eating too much sugar will make you fat. If you

eat a snack or a meal, you should drink a lot of water. You should not eat too much food. Too much food means much weight but less health.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Too much sugar will make you
 a healthy b fit c strong d fat
2. The underlined word "it" refers to
 a soda b water c food d health

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the passage?
4. Why is it hard for some people to keep healthy?
5. What happens if you eat too much food?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make a sentence:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة:

1. spreading - a wildfire - that - is - I - the forest - heard - in.
2. brought - the land- soil - The water - to - rich.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. My father (**has**) a nice car last year.
2. Amira is (**happy**) than Mohamed.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. The teacher give us homework last monday
2. Why didn t you go to school yesterday

8 Write an email of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب إيميل من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

to your friend Sameer to tell him about animals in the desert. Your name is Ali and your email is ali22@gmail.com. Your friend's email is Sameer45@yahoo.com

Guiding Words

hot - many animals

.....

Test 3

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. Tom had a healthy tree.

a apple

b date

c mango

d fig

2. When Tom came back, the tree was

a tall

b good

c strong

d weak

3. Tom knew that he was

a selfish

b hungry

c strong

d unhealthy

4. At the end, the tree grew

a strong

b unhealthy

c amazing

d healthy

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. The heart is the most important in our bodies.

a organ

b way

c tool

d hole

2. The Ancient Egyptians found smart ways to

a damage

b breathe

c grow

d survive

3. I saw a deep that was full of water last week.

a wall

b tool

c well

d sun

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

ingredients - snack - famous - lentils

Koshari is a tasty Egyptian meal It has many simple **1** in one bowl. It is the most **2** Egyptian traditional street food all over Egypt. It's a wonderful mix of rice, pasta, and brown **3** These ingredients are put together in one bowl. In Egypt, we all love this dish.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

My name's Lamia. I'm nine years old. I live in Aswan with my family. My parents are teachers. My brother Ali plays football at school and he watches football matches on

TV. Khaled goes swimming every Friday. There's a swimming pool near our house. My best friend is Aya. We play basketball at school and we're **both** in the school team. Our team is very good!

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I think Lamia's family is

- a** sad **b** happy **c** boring **d** bad

2. The underlined word "both" refers to

- a** the parents **b** Khaled and Ali **c** Aya and Khaled **d** Lamia and Aya

B- Answer the following questions:

3. How old is Lamia?

4. How many people are there in Lamia's family?

5. Summarize the text in one sentence.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make a sentence:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة:

1. mud - **People** - bricks - built - thick - their homes - with.

2. around - are - rivers - many - the world - **There**.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. (**Are**) there sandstorms in the past?

2. The weather is hot (**at**) summer.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. what time do we play sports

2. they were at the club a week ago

8 Write a paragraph of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

A short story you read

Guiding Words

apple tree - made a crown

.....
.....

Test 4

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. Koshari is a tasty meal.

- a** Egyptian **b** English **c** African **d** French

2. It has many simple in one bowl.

- a** rice **b** pasta **c** ingredients **d** meat

3. It is the most famous Egyptian street food.

- a** expensive **b** cheap **c** boring **d** traditional

4. It's a wonderful mix of rice, pasta, and brown

- a** bowl **b** bread **c** lentils **d** pizza

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. The is a fun place to play sports.

- a** club **b** restaurant **c** school **d** street

2. We get from the food we eat.

- a** electricity **b** oxygen **c** blood **d** nutrients

3. Egypt's land along the Nile is, so we can grow food.

- a** poor **b** dry **c** fertile **d** wise

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

weight - strong - energy - muscles

Sports makes your heart strong. It helps your **1** grow. It also increases energy. Swimming is very good. It makes your lungs **2** In fact, it helps your whole body. It helps you lose **3** and makes your bones stronger.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Last weekend, my father took us to have lunch in a big restaurant in Alexandria. **It's** a famous restaurant. The waiter brought us the menu. I ordered chicken with rice. My mother asked for a pizza. My father paid a lot of money. The food was delicious, but

the prices were not good. The weather was great. We walked to our home happily.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

- My father took us to have lunch in a big restaurant in
 a Alexandria b Giza c Cairo d Aswan
- The underlined word "It" refers to
 a pizza b lunch c Alexandria d the restaurant

B- Answer the following questions:

- what did they order at the restaurant?
- What was the weather like there?
- Summarize the text in one sentence.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make a sentence:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة:

- to - live - decided not - frogs - in - The two - the well.
- for - and - early - eats - goes - The family - dinner - a walk.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- The Ancient Egyptians (**don't**) have modern tools to help them.
- This test is (**good**) than the last one.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- where do you like to go in your neighborhood
- i usually go to the supermarket

8 Write a paragraph of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Your favorite Egyptian dish

Guiding Words

koshari - traditional

Test 5

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. It is to play sports.

- a important b polluted c ugly d tiring

2. Sports help us stay and make our bodies stronger.

- a sleep b cheap c healthy d alive

3. I play with my friends two times every week.

- a football b tennis c handball d volleyball

4. Football helps me stay healthy and

- a strong b good c bored d happy

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The heart pumps blood through

- a blood vessels b plants c pipes d books

2. The waiter brought us a healthy meal at the

- a supermarket b theme park c club d restaurant

3. Small fish in the Nile River eat

- a small crocodiles b trees c water weeds d small boys

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

selfish - care - weak - traveled

Tom had a strong apple tree. It gave him apples and he played on it. He ① away and when he came back, the tree was weak. Tom knew that he was ② So he decided to take ③ of the tree. The tree grew strong again.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

We know that we need oxygen to breathe. We also know that trees breathe in carbon dioxide. We need to plant more trees to help stop pollution. There are many trees but people cut down trees every day. It's dangerous to do that as trees are

important for the environment. We cut down trees and plants all over the world even in Egypt. All people can help the environment when they plant trees.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

- We need oxygen to breathe
 a breathe b plant c sleep d develop
- The opposite of the underlined word "cut down" refers to
 a water b damage c plant d paint

B- Answer the following questions:

- What's the main idea of the passage?
- How do you think trees help us?
- What can people do to help the environment?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make a sentence:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة:

- the small - over - The gazelle - stream - leaped.
- last week - in - you - about - Did - the flood - our city - hear?

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- What did the Ancient Egyptians (used) to build houses?
- I travel to Aswan (on) February.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- hana goes to school five days a week
- how do you travel to paris?

8 Write a paragraph of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Sports for better health

Guiding Words

do sports - heart

Test 6

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. Sports makes your _____ strong.

a hands

b head

c eyes

d heart

2. Sports helps your _____ grow.

a grass

b plants

c muscles

d hair

3. Swimming makes your lungs _____

a weak

b traditional

c expensive

d strong

4. It helps you lose _____

a weight

b money

c bad friends

d time

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Snakes often eat small animals, like _____ or lizards.

a rats

b hippos

c lions

d camels

2. I like the _____ because I enjoy spending time with the animals.

a park

b mountain

c cottage

d barn

3. Exercising and sleeping enough are good for our _____

a snack

b medicine

c mental health

d knowledge

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

regularly - rest - enough - toothpaste

To stay healthy , you should wash your hands before and after eating. Eat fruits and vegetables regularly. Drink ¹ _____ water daily. Exercise ² _____. Sleep early and get enough rest. Brush your teeth daily with ³ _____ in the morning and before you sleep.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Mrs Soha was a teacher of English in my school. She was very kind and helpful, so all students liked her. She used to come to school at 7 o'clock in the morning to give her students more lessons and help them with their homework. She has a small family. Her

husband is a doctor. She has two daughters, Salma and Hoda, and only one son, Taha. Taha is going to be a dentist. Salma likes English and science. She wants to be a doctor like her father. Hoda, the youngest daughter, wants to be a computer programmer.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Taha wants to be a

- a** doctor **b** nurse **c** dentist **d** computer programmer

2. Mrs Soha's husband works in a

- a** bank **b** hospital **c** school **d** farm

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What subjects does Salma like?
4. How many children does Mrs. Soha have?
5. What is the best title of this passage?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make a sentence:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة:

1. frying - grill - or - **We** - food - instead of - bake.
2. a new - **There** - last year - was - city - in - built - Egypt.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. She eats (**some**) egg in the morning.
2. (**Did**) it hot yesterday?

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. what is the village like at night
2. mr Mahmoud is a kind teacher

8 Write a paragraph of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Your habits now and in the past

Guiding Words

changed - sleep late

Test 7

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. Adam has changed his

a clothes

b habits

c books

d cars

2. In the past, Adam woke up late on

a exercise

b school

c time

d weekends

3. Now, Adam wakes up

a early

b late

c at 7 am

d at 5 am

4. Adam exercises

a every morning

b every week

c every hour

d every afternoon

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The Ancient Egyptians found smart ways to

a damage

b breathe

c survive

d grow

2. We live in a cozy near the community center.

a barn

b cottage

c tower

d tool

3. Each animal in the desert has an important to play.

a kind

b role

c way

d skin

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

spreads - run - winds - burned

I heard that a wildfire is spreading in the forest in U.S.A. It is close to the mountains and it ① quickly because it's dry there, and the ② are so strong. Sadly, many trees ③ down, and animals lost their homes.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

I'm Nada, I'm from Assiut. I'm 11 years old. I'm in primary five at school. My school is near my house, so I usually walk to school. My favourite subjects are English and

science. We have English every day but we have science on Saturday and Monday. I always do my homework before dinner. I usually watch TV in the evening then sleep at 10:00 o'clock.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Nada goes to bed at
 a 7 b 5 c 12 d 10
2. Nada is a girl.
 a bad b unhealthy c good d weak

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Where's Nada's school?
4. How does she go to school?
5. Summarize the text in one sentence.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make a sentence:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة:

1. the theme - rides - You - on - go - at - can - park.
2. river - the world - is - the longest - around - The Nile.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. (in) night, the village is calm and quiet.
2. This test is worse (that) the last one.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. the city has green areas
2. is it easy to go to aswan?

8 Write a paragraph of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Ways to stay healthy

Guiding phrases

wash your hands - enough water daily

Test 8

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. My family grill or bake food instead of
 a eating b doing c making d frying
2. The family eat early.
 a meals b food c snacks d dinner
3. They eat dinner followed by a
 a cup of tea b soda c snack d walk
4. These changes give the family more
 a energy b money c time d health

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Plants need to grow.
 a sunlight b weeds c fossil fuel d buildings
2. Too much can hurt your heart.
 a stress b water c oxygen d sleep
3. He wants everything for himself. He is
 a hungry b weak c healthy d selfish

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

diagnose - news - damaged - stuck

The flood in our city last week was terrible .I saw it on the ① The water covered the streets, and many cars got ② It looked scary. My uncle's house was ③ The water flooded his living room, and he had to stay with us for a few days.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Last summer, Tom travelled to Egypt because he wanted to learn Arabic. He went to a language school in Cairo. The people in Cairo were friendly. At first, he wasn't

good at Arabic but teachers helped him and the lessons were fun. Cairo's shops are fantastic. Tom bought lots of souvenirs. He visited lots of places. His favourite place was the museum. He liked going there with friends. They took a lot of nice photos. Tom was very happy. He liked Egypt and wanted to visit it again.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

- The people in Cairo were
 a busy b busy c lazy d healthy
- The underlined word "him" refers to
 a Tom b a teacher c a friend d a man

B- Answer the following questions:

- What did they take at the museum?
- Why did Tom go to Egypt?
- When did Tom travel to Egypt?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make a sentence:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة:

- playing - does - our body - sports - How - help - and - mind?
- dinner - go - We - to - often - restaurants - for.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- They have (a) orange juice.
- I was born (on) March.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- Did she visit the pyramids in may?
- The party is on friday

8 Write a paragraph of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

the heart

Guiding Words

organ - pumps

Test 9

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع و أختار الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



- The heart is one of the most important of our body.
 a kind b organ c meal d way
- The heart is the size of your
 a arm b head c eyes d fist
- The heart pumps to all parts of the body.
 a blood b juice c water d oxygen
- The heart pumps blood through
 a arms and legs b organs c oxygen d blood vessels

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

- The doctor will the illness using his skills and knowledge.
 a support b diagnose c make d design
- The queen wore a shiny gold at the ceremony.
 a sail b shade c crown d branch
- Natural resources like minerals help our country
 a sleep b play c write d grow

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

give - treatments - treat - knowledge

Doctors work day and night to keep people healthy. They ¹ our illnesses. Doctors use their ² and skills to check patients, diagnose diseases, and provide ³ They spend their lives helping others. Being a doctor is an important job.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Cairo is a big city. It is in Egypt. About twenty million people live there. There are a lot of gardens where families can go and spend a nice time. There are also a lot of

restaurants where you can have delicious meals and different dishes. Many tourists from all over the world visit it. They enjoy visiting ancient places. They visit the Egyptian Museum to see the ancient treasures and statues.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

- About twenty million people live in
 a Egypt b Africa c Cairo d the world
- The underlined word "it" refers to
 a Cairo b the restaurant c Egypt d the meal

B- Answer the following questions:

- Why do they visit the Egyptian Museum?
- What places do tourists visit there?
- Where is Cairo?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make a sentence:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة:

- shop - I - coffee - going - like - to - for - the coffee.
- helps - sleep - Exercising - you - better - regularly.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- The party is (**in**) Friday.
- They (**meet**) their friends last week.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- My sister speaks english
- does he go to work on foot

8 Write a paragraph of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Healthcare workers

Guiding Words

heroes - thank

Test 10

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. The heart is a strong

- a** body **b** fist **c** muscle **d** kind

2. The heart keeps us

- a** sleep **b** unhealthy **c** health **d** alive

3. It is important to keep the heart

- a** healthy **b** weak **c** sleep **d** wake up

4. You can take care of your heart by eating food.

- a** good **b** expensive **c** traditional **d** unhealthy

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. are the organs in your chest that help you breathe.

- a** Lungs **b** Arms **c** Feet **d** Hands

2. come from ancient plants and animals.

- a** Wind **b** Minerals **c** Fossil fuels **d** Health

3. A bird built a nest on a high of the tree.

- a** shade **b** crown **c** branch **d** strong

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

drought - breathe - built - mud bricks

Sandstorms ,called Khamsin, brought strong, hot winds with sand. It was hard to see and ① People stayed inside to stay safe. They ② their homes with thick ③ to protect themselves from the wind and sand.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Doctors are important because they look after people. Doctors are people who take care of others and help them get well when they are sick. Doctors help sick people to get better by giving them medicine. They work in hospitals. They are helpful. To

be a doctor, You should work hard. You should like working with people and helping others. You should be kind. If you aren't kind, people won't love you.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

- When you aren't a kind doctor, people will you.
 a love b like c don't like d meet
- The underlined word "They" refers to
 a people b doctors c hospitals d patients

B- Answer the following questions:

- Why are doctors important?
- What do you think of the doctor's job?
- How do doctors help sick people?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make a sentence:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة:

- very - are - sometimes - Lizards - dangerous.
- cakes - and - You - bread - can - at - the - bakery - buy.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- Is there (some) milk in the fridge?
- My birthday is (in) June 8th.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- why do we research anything
- egypt builds new cities almost everywhere

8 Write a paragraph of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Healthy habits

Guiding Words

exercise - brush

.....

Test 11

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع و أختار الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



- Doctors work day and night to keep people
 a patients b healthy c ill d weak
- Doctors our illnesses.
 a treat b do c provide d read
- Doctors use their and skills to check patients.
 a hospitals b glasses c money d knowledge
- Doctors diagnose diseases and provide
 a treatments b skills c diseases d knowledge

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

- I was in my car during the flood. I couldn't move.
 a spread b stuck c sleep d get
- The farmer planted seeds in the rich
 a soil b water c cottage d barn
- The farmer started to for the tree so it began to become better.
 a care b famous c water d harvest

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

strong - weekends - fit - exercise

Hello! I'm Adam, and I'd like to share how my habits have changed. In the past, I woke up late on ① and didn't exercise much. Now, I wake up early and ② every morning-it makes me feel ③ and happy.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Mr Mahmoud is a famous teacher of English in my school for boys and girls. He likes his job very much. He is also helpful to his students. He helps them to do their homework in his office. He enjoys growing flowers in the school garden. He is about

forty years old. He has one daughter and one son. He starts work at half past seven. He finishes it at half past two pm. He's very kind to his students. They always go to him if they have any problems.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

- Mr Mahmoud is a teacher of
 a science b maths c Arabic d English
- The underlined word "it" refers to
 a English b work c school d homework

B- Answer the following questions:

- How does Mr Mahmoud help his student?
- How many children does Mr. Mahmoud have?
- Summarize the text in one sentence.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make a sentence:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة:

- make - stronger - help - our - us - bodies - Sports
- the smell - of - love - fresh - I - bread.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- We sometimes (has) a picnic in the park.
- Malik (watch) TV early last night.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- they went to aswan
- can you help me

8 Write a paragraph of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Hidden treasures

Guiding phrases

precious mineral resources - never waste them

Test 12

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختار الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. To stay healthy, you should wash your before and after eating.

- a** mouth **b** feet **c** teeth **d** hands

2. You should drink enough daily.

- a** tea **b** soda **c** juice **d** water

3. Sleep early and get enough to be healthy.

- a** exercise **b** water **c** money **d** rest

4. Brush your teeth with toothpaste.

- a** daily **b** every hour **c** once **d** night

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Lungs are the organs in your chest that help you

- a** a.think **b** move **c** breathe **d** eat

2. The Nile River is the most important resource in Egypt.

- a** wind **b** sand **c** water **d** oil

3. A lot of trees burned down in a

- a** wildfire **b** drought **c** flood **d** heart

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

kind - muscle - drinking - care

The heart is the most important organ in our bodies. The heart is a strong **1** that keeps us alive. Too much stress can hurt your heart, so it's important to keep it healthy. You can take **2** of your heart by eating good food, sleeping well, and **3** a lot of water.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

There are many hidden treasures under the earth. We find precious mineral resources like gold, diamond, copper, and iron. These are used every day to make

important things. Gold is soft, shiny, and easy to shape. People use it for coins and jewelry. Diamond is a rare mineral and more expensive and more valuable than gold. Copper is a strong metal and it is used in electrical wires, pipes, and tools. It's cheaper than gold. Egypt gets most of its copper and gold from the Eastern Desert.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

- Gold is easy to
 a use b shape c eat d find
- The underlined word "it" refers to
 a gold b copper c diamond d wire

B- Answer the following questions:

- What mineral is used to make electrical wires?
- Where does Egypt get most of its copper and gold?
- Summarize the text in one sentence.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make a sentence:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة:

- visit - is - favorite - What - place - to - your?
- village - I - green - in - with - live - fields - a small.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- There aren't (**some**) apples left.
- I moved to Alexandria (**at**) 2020.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- we go to the club on fridays.
- Did salma watch TV on night ٢٠٢٠

8 Write a paragraph of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

The weather in Ancient Egypt

Guiding Words

bad weather - problems

Test 13

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختَر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. There was a \ an in our city.

- a** accident **b** pollution **c** water **d** flood

2. The flood was last

- a** week **b** month **c** year **d** afternoon

3. My uncle's house was

- a** built **b** damaged **c** provided **d** painted

4. My uncle had to stay with us for

- a** an hour **b** a year **c** a month **d** for a few days

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. The land helps us grow food.

- a** bad **b** crops **c** desert **d** fertile

2. Can you make a for our supermarket?

- a** dish **b** recipe **c** canoe **d** flyer

3. A can cause wildfires to spread easily.

- a** drought **b** flood **c** book **d** sandstorm

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

better - habits - check - grill

My family became healthy now. Their **1** changed. They **2** or bake food instead of frying like we used to do in the past, and we eat dinner early, followed by a walk. These changes give me more energy and help me feel **3**

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

There are many rivers around the world. The Nile is one of the longest rivers in the world. It is home to many different animals. Crocodiles are strong and dangerous. They hunt large animals in or near the water. Small fish in the river eat water weeds.

Birds eat insects , small fish, and plants near the river.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

- The Nile is one of the rivers in the world.
 a cleanest b greenest c widest d longest
- The underlined word "They" refers to
 a animals b crocodiles c fish d birds

B- Answer the following questions:

- What does small fish eat?
- Why are crocodiles dangerous?
- What do crocodiles eat?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make a sentence:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة:

- a tasty - Koshari - meal - is - Egyptian.
- there - at - People - to - the market - shop - meet.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- We (**sometimes**) go to school on weekends.
- The coffee shop is very busy (**in**) lunchtime.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- we play sports every day
- It s important to protect our hearts

8 Write a paragraph of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

A short story you like

Guiding Words

two frogs - small pond

Test 14

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. Last year, there was a \ an

- a** flood **b** wildfire **c** drought **d** accident

2. It was in

- a** deserts **b** China **c** Egypt **d** America

3. There was no rain in China for

- a** months **b** days **c** hours **d** weeks

4. The land got so that animals couldn't find water.

- a** water **b** dirty **c** grow **d** dry

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. The can be dangerous for young children.

- a** lightning **b** temperature **c** oxygen **d** heat wave

2. The boy had a small toy car in his

- a** fist **b** head **c** car **d** glasses

3. Natural resources like minerals help our country

- a** support **b** survive **c** grow **d** fly

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

longest - water weeds - ibis - Crocodiles

There are many rivers around the world. The Nile is one of the **1** rivers in the world. It is home to many different animals. **2** are strong and dangerous. They hunt large animals in or near the water. Small fish in the river eat **3**

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

The desert is hot and dry, but many animals live there. Snakes often eat small animals like rats or lizards. Camels live in the desert, too. **They** eat plants to stay strong. Lizards eat insects. They give them energy. Some animals hide under rocks

to stay cool during the day. Others, like owls, come out at night when it is cooler. Each animal has an important role in the desert. They help nature stay in balance.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

- Snakes often eat
 a small animals b turtles c birds d weeds
- The underlined word "They" refers to
 a deserts b people c snakes d camels

B- Answer the following questions:

- What is the passage about?
- Why do some animals hide under rocks?
- Summarize the text in one sentence.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make a sentence:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة:

- help - care - can - we - **How** - those - for - who - us?
- in - animals - keep - the - their - barns - **Farmers**

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- I get up **(on)** 6 a.m, every day.
- She **(not go)** at the club a week ago.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- I go to Alex in july every year
- They watched tv in the evening.

8 Write a paragraph of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

places in your community

Guiding Words

restaurants - bakery

Test 15

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. Khamsin brought strong, hot winds with
 a sand b air c mud d pollution
2. During the sandstorm, it was hard to see and
 a exercise b run away c sleep d breathe
3. People stayed inside to stay
 a healthy b strong c safe d fit
4. People tried to protect themselves from the and sand.
 a wind b fire c flood d drought

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. A \ An a special hat worn by kings or queens.
 a necklace b uniform c mask d crown
2. She taught her son how to himself.
 a grow b try c breathe d bathe
3. A lot of trees burned down in a \ an
 a wildfire b drought c accident d ceremony

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

water weeds - colorful - crocodiles - fish

There are small fish in the Nile River. They are so ¹ These small fish eat plants in the water. These are called ² Birds near the Nile eat small fish, insects, and even plants near the river. Sometimes, there are larger animals that come near the water. Huge ³ are scary. They are the kings of the Nile!

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

The heart is a strong muscle in our bodies. It is the most important organ. It is about the size of a fist. It is found in the chest, slightly to the left of the center. Its

main job is to pump blood through the body. The blood carries oxygen and nutrients to all parts of the body, helping us grow and stay healthy. **It** works all the time, even when we sleep, beating about 70 times a minute. Without the heart, the body could not survive, making it one of our most important organs.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The heart is in the of the center.
 a left b middle c south d right
2. The underlined word "It" refers to
 a body b muscle c heart d blood

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What's the main idea of the passage?
4. What does blood carry to the body?
5. Does the heart work when you sleep?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make a sentence:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة:

6. simple - in - **Life** - a village - peaceful - and - is.
7. different - home - **The Nile** - to - is - animals - many.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. (**Do**) the teacher give us homework last Monday?
2. I don't go to the club. I (**go never**) there.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. On monday, we meet our friends
2. do you have any money

8 Write a paragraph of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Life in the village

Guiding phrases

a small village - full of life

.....

AL - Azhar General Test

AL- Azhar

Test 16

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: استمع واختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب



1. Camels eat to stay strong. (insects - plants - lizards)
2. Some animals hide under rocks to during the day. (stay cool - sleep at night - look for food)
3. Owls come out at when it is cooler. (morning - night - noon)

2 Read and complete the dialog: اقرأ واكمل:

pasta - tomato sauce - lentils - onions

- Mahmoud** : I love Koshari! My favorite part is the small - - - - mixed with the rice.
Yara : Me too! First, we cook - - - - - in a pot until they are soft.
Mahmoud : Then we make the red sauce using garlic and - - - - with some spices.
Yara : And of course, we put crispy - - - - - on top. That's the best part!.

3 Read the text and answer questions: اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة:

Hello! I'm Adam, and I'd like to share how my habits have changed. In the past, I woke up late on weekends and didn't exercise much. Now, I wake up early and exercise every morning .It makes me feel strong and happy. I used to watch TV all day, but now I play football with friends every Saturday. Before, I loved chips, burgers, and sweets. Now, I eat more fruits and vegetables, which give me important vitamins. My favorite snacks are apples, bananas, and carrots. And I drink water instead of soda. My family's habits changed too. We grill or bake food instead of frying like we used to do in the past, and we eat dinner early, followed by a walk.

A: Choose the correct answer:

1. Now, Adam wakes up and exercises every morning.
☐ a early ☐ b late ☐ c sometimes
2. Adam plays with his friends every Saturday.
☐ a football ☐ b basketball ☐ c tennis

3. Adam drinks water instead of

a milk

b soda

c juice

B: Answer the following questions:

4. What kind of snacks does Adam eat now?

5. How did Adam's family change the way they cook food?

4 Choose the correct answer:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Omar was so He didn't want to give his toys to anyone.

a careful

b selfish

c old

d cold

2. Omar will buy apples for the picnic.

a a

b some

c any

d an

3. Stressed is when you feel unhappy or

a happy

b pleased

c relaxed

d tired

4. To save our, we must keep it clean.

a plant

b planet

c forest

d storm

5. She didn't yesterday.

a sleep

b sleeps

c slept

d sleeping

5 Rearrange the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. a - made - She - crown - flowers - from.

2. in - happen - places - very - Droughts - hot.

3. come - you - want - to - with - Do - me?

4. took - main - photos - We - in the - square.

5. lives - cozy - in - Grandma - cottage - a.

Listening Material

نصوص الاستماع الواردة في كراسة التدريبات



نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بأسئلة الاستماع الواردة في كراسة التدريبات والاختبارات

Test 1 on Unit 1

There are many rivers around the world. The Nile River is one of the longest rivers in the world. It is home to many different animals. Crocodiles are strong and dangerous. They hunt large animals in or near the water. Small fish in the river eat insects. Birds eat water weeds, small fish, and plants near the river.

Test 2 on Unit 2

My neighbor Mr. Ayman is healthy. He plays football. He's very strong. He thinks that playing sports helps him lose weight and fit and makes his bones stronger. He can sleep better and reduce stress. He eats more fruit and vegetables to give him more energy.

Test 3 on Unit 3

In Ancient Egypt there was extreme weather like floods, droughts, thunderstorms and sandstorms. This extreme weather caused problems and affected the way people lived. The Ancient Egyptians didn't have modern machines, but they found smart ways to survive. They worked hard, used simple tools and protected themselves from heat and floods.

Test 4 on unit 4

The New Administrative Capital is almost finished. Builders are making modern buildings everywhere. The Iconic Tower is the tallest in Africa. Government workers will move here soon. Smart technology will reduce traffic and

save energy. From the top floors, you can see the whole city. It's an important project for Egypt's future. Great idea!

Test 5 on unit 5

Plants need water to live. Without rain, they get thirsty. The river and lakes give them water. Dirty water can hurt plants. People must care for plants carefully. Wild animals drink from small lakes too. Plants make life beautiful. Everyone should keep water clean.

General Tests

Test

1

There are small fish in the Nile River. They are so colorful. These small fish eat plants in the water. These are called water weeds. Birds near the Nile eat small fish, insects, and even plants near the river. Sometimes, there are larger animals that come near the water. Huge crocodiles are scary. They are the kings of the Nile!

Test

2

Many animals live in the desert. It is very hot and dry. Snakes often eat small animals like rats or lizards. Lizards eat insects, which give them energy. Camels live in the desert, too. They eat plants to stay strong. Some animals hide under rocks to stay cool during the day.

Test 3

Tom had a healthy apple tree. The tree gave Tom apples and Tom played on it. Tom traveled away and when he came back, the tree was weak. Tom knew that he was selfish. So he decided to take care of the tree. The tree grew strong again.

Test 4

Koshari is a tasty Egyptian meal. It has many simple ingredients in one bowl. It is the most famous Egyptian traditional street food all over Egypt. It's a wonderful mix of rice, pasta, and brown lentils. These ingredients are put together in one bowl. In Egypt, we all love this dish.

Test 5

It is important to play sports. Sports help us stay healthy and make our bodies stronger. I like playing football. I play it with my friends two times every week. It helps me stay healthy and strong.

Test 6

Sports makes your heart strong and helps your muscles grow. It also increases energy. Swimming is very good. It makes your lungs strong. In fact, it helps your whole body. It helps you lose weight and makes your bones stronger.

Test 7

Hello! I'm Adam, and I'd like to share how my habits have changed. In the past, I woke up late on weekends and didn't exercise much. Now,

I wake up early and exercise every morning-it makes me feel strong and happy.

Test 8

My family's habits changed. We grill or bake food instead of frying like we used to do in the past, and we eat dinner early, followed by a walk. These changes give me more energy and help me feel better.

Test 9

We have an amazing body. The heart is one of the most important organs of our body. It is about the size of your fist. The heart's job is to pump blood to all parts of the body.

Test 10

The heart is a strong muscle that keeps us alive. Too much stress can hurt your heart, so it's important to keep it healthy. You can take care of your heart by eating good food, sleeping well, and drinking a lot of water.

Test 11

Doctors work day and night to keep people healthy. They treat our illnesses. Doctors use their knowledge and skills to check patients, diagnose diseases, and provide treatments. They spend their lives helping others.

Test 12

To stay healthy, you should wash your hands before and after eating. Eat fruits and vegetables regularly. Drink enough water daily. Exercise regularly. Sleep early and get enough rest. Brush your teeth daily with toothpaste in the morning and before you sleep.

Test 13

The flood in our city last week was terrible. I saw it on the news. The water covered the streets, and many cars got stuck. It looked scary. My uncle's house was damaged. The water flooded his living room, and he had to stay with us for a few days.

Test 14

Last year, there was a drought —no rain in China for months. Farmers could not grow crops because there was no water. Droughts are awful! The land got so dry that animals couldn't find water.

Test 15

Sandstorms ,called Khamsin , brought strong, hot winds with sand. It was hard to see and breathe. People stayed inside to stay safe. They built their homes with thick mud bricks to protect themselves from the wind and sand.

AL- Azhar 16

The desert is hot and dry, but many animals live there. Snakes often eat small animals like rats or lizards. Camels live in the desert, too. They eat plants to stay strong. Lizards eat insects, which give them energy. Some animals hide under rocks to stay cool during the day. Others, like owls, come out at night when it is cooler. Each animal has an important role in the desert. They help nature stay in balance.